### F97CMN and G97CMN Modulating, High Efficiency Condensing Gas Furnace, 4-Way Multipoise

# Installation, Start-up, Operating and Service and Maintenance Instructions

<b>NOTE:</b> Read the entire instruction manual before starting the installation.
TABLE OF CONTENTS
REQUIRED NOTICE FOR MASSACHUSETTS INSTALLATIONS
IMPORTANT
SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS
Table 1 – Minimum Clearances to Combustible Materials for All Units 5
INTRODUCTION
Table 2 – Loose Parts Bag
CODES AND STANDARDS6
ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) PRECAUTIONS PROCE-
DURE
ACCESSORIES
LOCATION
AIR FOR COMBUSTION AND VENTILATION 8
Table 3 – Minimum Free Area Required for Each Combustion Air
Opening or Duct to Outdoors9
Table 4 - Minimum Space Volumes for 100% Combustion, Ventila-
tion and Dilution Air from Outdoors
CONDENSATE TRAP
CONDENSATE DRAIN CONNECTION
INSTALLATION
Table 5 – Opening Dimensions - In. (mm)
Table 6 – Filter Information
AIR DUCTS
Table 7 – Cooling4 and Heating Air Delivery - CFM (Bottom Return5
With Filter)
GAS PIPING
Table 8 – Maximum Capacity of Pipe
ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS
Table 9 – Electrical Data
VENTING
Table 10 - Vent Termination Kit for Direct Vent (2-pipe) Systems32
Table 11 – Maximum Equivalent Vent Length - Ft
Table 12 – Deductions from Maximum Equivalent Vent Length - Ft.
(M)
Table 13 – Maximum Allowable Exposed Vent Lengths Insulation Ta-
ble43
Maximum Allowable Exposed Vent Length in Unconditioned Space - Ft 43
Maximum Allowable Exposed Vent Length in Unconditioned Space -
Meters
Table 14 – Hanger Spacing
Table 15 – Approved Combustion-Air and Vent Pipe, Fitting and Ce-
ment Materials
START-UP, ADJUSTMENT, AND SAFETY CHECK
Table 16 – Altitude Derate Multiplier for U.S.A.* 50
Table 17 – Gas Rate (CU ft./hr)

Table 18 – Blower Off Delay Setup Switch
Table 19 - Orifice Size and Manifold Pressure (In. W.C.) for Gas Inpu
Rate 55
Table 20 - Orifice Size and Manifold Pressure (In. W.C.) for Gas Inpu
Rate 55
SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES56
Winterization
SEQUENCE OF OPERATION
PARTS REPLACEMENT INFORMATION GUIDE
MODEL NOMENCLATURE













A20032

### **WARNING**

### CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury and/or death.

Carbon Monoxide (CO) is a colorless, odorless, and tasteless poisonous gas that can be fatal when inhaled. Follow all installation, maintenance, and service instructions. See additional information below regarding the installation of a CO Alarm.

Most states in the USA and jurisdictions in Canada have laws that require the use of Carbon Monoxide (CO) alarms with fuel burning products. Examples of fuel burning products are furnaces, boilers, space heaters, generators, water heaters, stoves/ranges, clothes dryers, fireplaces, incinerators, automobiles, and other internal combustion engines. Even if there are no laws in your jurisdiction requiring a CO Alarm, it's highly recommended that whenever any fuel burning product is used in or around the home or business that the dwelling be equipped with a CO Alarm(s). The Consumer Product Safety Commission recommends the use of CO Alarm(s). The CO Alarm(s) must be installed, operated, and maintained according to the CO Alarm manufacturer's instructions. For more information about Carbon Monoxide, local laws, or to purchase a CO Alarm online, please visit the following website. https://www.kidde.com.

Portions of the text and tables are reprinted from NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1E, with permission of National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269 and American Gas Association, Washington DC 20001. This reprinted material is not the complete and official position of the NFPA or ANSI on the referenced subject, which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.

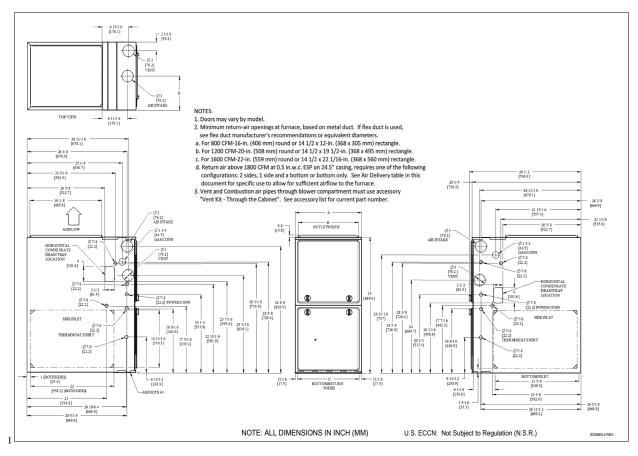
# REQUIRED NOTICE FOR MASSACHUSETTS INSTALLATIONS IMPORTANT

The Commonwealth of Massachusetts requires compliance with regulation 248 CMR as follows:

5.08: Modifications to NFPA-54, Chapter 10

- 2) Revise 10.8.3 by adding the following additional requirements:
  - a. For all side wall horizontally vented gas fueled equipment installed in every dwelling, building or structure used in whole or in part for residential purposes, including those owned or operated by the Commonwealth and where the side wall exhaust vent termination is less than seven (7) feet above finished grade in the area of the venting, including but not limited to decks and porches, the following requirements shall be satisfied:
- 1. INSTALLATION OF CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS. At the time of installation of the side wall horizontal vented gas fueled equipment, the installing plumber or gasfitter shall observe that a hard wired carbon monoxide detector with an alarm and battery back-up is installed on the floor level where the gas equipment is to be installed. In addition, the installing plumber or gasfitter shall observe that a battery operated or hard wired carbon monoxide detector with an alarm is installed on each additional level of the dwelling, building or structure served by the side wall horizontal vented gas fueled equipment. It shall be the responsibility of the property owner to secure the services of qualified licensed professionals for the installation of hard wired carbon monoxide detectors
  - a. In the event that the side wall horizontally vented gas fueled equipment is installed in a crawl space or an attic, the hard wired carbon monoxide detector with alarm and battery back-up may be installed on the next adjacent floor level.
  - b. In the event that the requirements of this subdivision can not be met at the time of completion of installation, the owner shall have a period of thirty (30) days to comply with the above requirements; provided, however, that during said thirty (30) day period, a battery operated carbon monoxide detector with an alarm shall be installed.
- 2. APPROVED CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS. Each carbon monoxide detector as required in accordance with the above provisions shall comply with NFPA 720 and be ANSI/UL 2034 listed and IAS certified.
- 3. SIGNAGE. A metal or plastic identification plate shall be permanently mounted to the exterior of the building at a minimum height of eight (8) feet above grade directly in line with the exhaust vent terminal for the horizontally vented gas fueled heating appliance or equipment. The sign shall read, in print size no less than one-half (1/2) inch in size, "GAS VENT DIRECTLY BELOW. KEEP CLEAR OF ALL OBSTRUCTIONS".
- 4. INSPECTION. The state or local gas inspector of the side wall horizontally vented gas fueled equipment shall not approve the installation unless, upon inspection, the inspector observes carbon monoxide detectors and signage installed in accordance with the provisions of 248 CMR 5.08(2)(a)1 through 4.
- 5. EXEMPTIONS: The following equipment is exempt from 248 CMR 5.08(2)(a)1 through 4:
  - (1.) The equipment listed in Chapter 10 entitled "Equipment Not Required To Be Vented" in the most current edition of NFPA 54 as adopted by the Board; and
  - (2.) Product Approved side wall horizontally vented gas fueled equipment installed in a room or structure separate from the dwelling, building or structure used in whole or in part for residential purposes.
  - a. MANUFACTURER REQUIREMENTS GAS EQUIPMENT VENTING SYSTEM PROVIDED. When the manufacturer of Product Approved side wall horizontally vented gas equipment provides a venting system design or venting system components with the equipment, the instructions provided by the manufacturer for installation of the equipment and the venting system shall include:
- 1. Detailed instructions for the installation of the venting system design or the venting system components; and
- 2. A complete parts list for the venting system design or venting system.
  - a. MANUFACTURER REQUIREMENTS GAS EQUIPMENT VENTING SYSTEM NOT PROVIDED. When the manufacturer of a Product Approved side wall horizontally vented gas fueled equipment does not provide the parts for venting the flue gases, but identifies "special venting systems", the following requirements shall be satisfied by the manufacturer:
- 3. The referenced "special venting system" instructions shall be included with the appliance or equipment installation instructions; and
- 4. The "special venting systems" shall be Product Approved by the Board, and the instructions for that system shall include a parts list and detailed installation instructions.
  - a. A copy of all installation instructions for all Product Approved side wall horizontally vented gas fueled equipment, all venting instructions, all parts lists for venting instructions, and/or all venting design instructions shall remain with the appliance or equipment at the completion of the installation.

For questions regarding these requirements, please contact the Commonwealth of Massachusetts Board of State Examiners of Plumbers and Gas Fitters, 239 Causeway Street, Boston, MA 02114. 617-727-9952.



A210210

	Α	В	С	D	SHIP WT.	
FURNACE SIZE	CABINET WIDTH	OUTLET WIDTH	BOTTOM INLET WIDTH	AIR INTAKE	LB (KG)	
0601714	17-1/2 (445)	15-7/8 (403)	16 (406)	8-3/4 (222)	139.5 (63.3)	
0602120	21 (533)	19-3/8 (492)	19-1/2 (495)	10-1/2 (267)	156.5 (71)	
0801714	17-1/2 (445)	15-7/8 (403)	16 (406)	8-3/4 (222)	143.5 (65.1)	
0802120	21 (533)	19-3/8 (492)	19-1/2 (495)	10-1/2 (267)	160.5 (72.8)	
1002122	21 (533)	19-3/8 (492)	19-1/2 (495)	10-1/2 (267)	167.5 (76)	
1202422	24-1/2 (622)	22-7/8 (581)	23 (584)	12-1/4 (311)	191 (86.6)	

Fig. 1 - Dimensional Drawing

### SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

# **WARNING**

### FIRE, INJURY, OR DEATH HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in property damage, personal injury, or death.

This furnace was manufactured to operate with natural gas. When fuel supply is Liquid Propane (LP), this furnace <u>must</u> be converted with a factory approved LP conversion kit. See furnace rating plate for approved conversion kit.

# **WARNING**

# FIRE, EXPLOSION, ELECTRICAL SHOCK, AND CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in dangerous operation, personal injury, death, or property damage.

Improper installation, adjustment, alteration, service, maintenance, or use can cause carbon monoxide poisoning, explosion, fire, electrical shock, or other conditions which may cause personal injury or property damage. Consult a qualified service agency, local gas supplier, or your distributor or branch for information or assistance. The qualified service agency must use only factory-authorized accessories and replacement parts when installing and servicing this product.

# **MARNING**

# FIRE, EXPLOSION, ELECTRICAL SHOCK, AND CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in dangerous operation, personal injury, death, or property damage.

Furnaces shall NOT be twinned (i.e. tandem or staged operation) unless approved in factory technical specifications literature for the furnace. A factory authorized, field-supplied Twinning Kit MUST be used. Consult furnace pre-sale literature for specific models approved for twinning and the correct twinning kit. Twinned furnaces must be installed on both a common supply AND a common return duct system as shown in the Twinning Kit Installation Instructions. Only two furnaces can be twinned on a common supply and return duct system using a factory authorized twinning kit.

### **WARNING**

#### FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, or property damage.

Solvents, cements and primers are combustible. Keep away from heat, sparks and open flame. Use only in well-ventilated areas. Avoid breathing in vapor or allowing contact with skin or eyes.

### **A** CAUTION

### FURNACE RELIABILITY HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in unit component damage. Application of this furnace should be indoors with special attention given to vent sizing and material, gas input rate, air temperature rise, unit leveling, and unit sizing.

Improper installation, adjustment, alteration, service, maintenance, or use can cause explosion, fire, electrical shock, or other conditions which may cause death, personal injury, or property damage. Consult a qualified installer, service agency, or your distributor or branch for information or assistance. The qualified installer or agency must use factory-authorized kits or accessories when modifying this product. Refer to the individual instructions packaged with the kits or accessories when installing.

Installing and servicing heating equipment can be hazardous due to gas and electrical components. Only trained and qualified personnel should install, repair, or service heating equipment. Untrained personnel can perform basic maintenance functions such as cleaning and replacing air filters. All other operations must be performed by trained service personnel. When working on heating equipment, observe precautions in literature, on tags, and on labels attached to or shipped with furnace and other safety precautions that may apply.

These instructions cover minimum requirements and conform to existing national standards and safety codes. In some instances, these instructions exceed certain local codes and ordinances, especially those that may not have kept up with changing residential construction practices. We require these instructions as a minimum for a safe installation.

Follow all safety codes. Wear safety glasses, protective clothing, and work gloves. Have a fire extinguisher available. Read these instructions thoroughly and follow all warnings or cautions included in literature and attached to the unit.

# **A** CAUTION

### **CUT HAZARD**

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury.

Sheet metal parts may have sharp edges or burrs. Use care and wear appropriate protective clothing, safety glasses and gloves when handling parts, and servicing furnaces.

This is the safety-alert symbol  $\triangle$ . When you see this symbol on the furnace and in instructions or manuals, be alert to the potential for personal injury.

Understand the signal words DANGER, WARNING, and CAUTION. These words are used with the safety-alert symbol. DANGER identifies the most serious hazards which will result in severe personal injury or death. WARNING signifies a hazard which could result in personal injury or death. CAUTION is used to identify hazards which may result in minor personal injury or product and property damage. NOTE and NOTICE are used to highlight suggestions which will result in enhanced installation, reliability, or operation.

- 1. Use only with type of gas approved for this furnace. Refer to the furnace rating plate.
- 2. Install this furnace only in a location and position as specified in the "Location" section of these instructions.
- 3. Provide adequate combustion and ventilation air to the furnace space as specified in "Air for Combustion and Ventilation" section.
- Combustion products must be discharged outdoors. Connect this furnace to an approved vent system only, as specified in the "Venting" section of these instructions.
- 5. Never test for gas leaks with an open flame. Use a commercially available soap solution made specifically for the detection of leaks to check all connections, as specified in the "Gas Piping" section.
- 6. Always install furnace to operate within the furnace's intended temperature-rise range with a duct system which has an external static pressure within the allowable range, as specified in the "Start-Up, Adjustments, and Safety Check" section. See furnace rating plate.
- 7. When a furnace is installed so that supply ducts carry air circulated by the furnace to areas outside the space containing the furnace, the return air shall also be handled by duct(s) sealed to the furnace casing and terminating outside the space containing the furnace. See "Air Ducts" section.
- 8. A gas-fired furnace for installation in a residential garage must be installed as specified in the warning box in the "Location" section.
- 9. The furnace may be used for construction heat provided that the furnace installation and operation complies with the first CAUTION in the LOCATION section of these instructions.
- 10. These Multipoise Gas-Fired Furnaces are CSA design-certified for use with natural and propane gases (see furnace rating plate) and for installation in alcoves, attics, basements, closets, utility rooms, crawlspaces, and garages. The furnace is factory-shipped for use with natural gas. A CSA (A.G.A. and C.G.A.) listed accessory gas conversion kit is required to convert furnace for use with propane gas.
- 11. See Table 1 for required clearances to combustible construction.

Table 1 – Minimum Clearances to Combustible Materials for All Units

POSITION	CLEARANCE
Rear	0 (0 mm)
Front (Combustion air openings in furnace and in structure)	1 in. (25 mm)
Required for service	*24 in. (610 mm)
All Sides of Supply Plenum	*1 in. (25 mm)
Sides	0 (0 mm)
Vent	0 (0 mm)
Top of Furnace	1 in. (25 mm)

- \* Consult local building codes.
- 12. Maintain a 1-in. (25 mm) clearance from combustible materials to supply air ductwork for a distance of 36 in. (914 mm) horizontally from the furnace. See NFPA 90B or local code for further requirements.
- 13. These furnaces SHALL NOT be installed directly on carpeting, combustible tile, or any other combustible material other than wood flooring. In downflow installations, factory accessory floor base MUST be used when installed on combustible materials and wood flooring. Special base is not required when this furnace is installed on manufacturer's Coil Assembly is used. See Table 1 for clearance to combustible construction information.

### **A** NOTICE

### **Important Installation and Start-up Procedures**

Failure to follow this procedure may result in a nuisance smoke or odor complaint.

The manifold pressure, gas rate by meter clocking, temperature rise and operation must be checked after installation. Minor smoke and odor may be present temporarily after start-up from the manufacturing process. Some occupants are more sensitive to this minor smoke and odor. It is recommended that doors and windows be open during the first heat cycle.

### INTRODUCTION

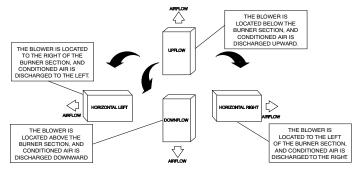


Fig. 2 – Multipoise Orientations

A12181

The 4-way multipoise Category IV condensing furnace is CSA design-certified for both direct-vent (2-pipe) and ventilated combustion air venting installations, see Fig. 2. The furnace is factory-shipped for use with natural gas. The furnace can be converted in the field for use with propane gas when a factory-supplied conversion kit is used. Refer to the furnace rating plate for conversion kit information.

This furnace is not approved for installation in mobile homes, recreational vehicles, or outdoors.

This furnace is designed for minimum continuous return-air temperature of 60°F (15°C) db or intermittent operation down to 55°F (13°C) db such as when used with a night setback thermostat. Return-air temperature must not exceed 80°F (27°C) db. Failure to follow these return-air

temperature limits may affect reliability of heat exchangers, motors, and controls, see Fig. 3.

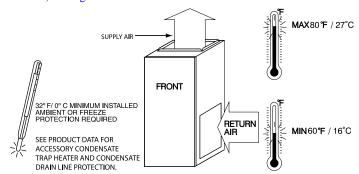


Fig. 3 – Freeze Protection and Return Air Temperature

The furnace should be sized to provide 100 percent of the design heating load requirement plus any margin that occurs because of furnace model size capacity increments. None of the furnace model sizes can be used if the heating load is 20,000 BTU or lower. Use Air Conditioning Contractors of America (Manual J and S); American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers; or other approved engineering method to calculate heating load estimates and select the furnace. Excessive oversizing of the furnace may cause the furnace and/or vent to fail prematurely, customer discomfort and/or vent freezing.

Failure to follow these guidelines is considered faulty installation and/or misapplication of the furnace; and resulting failure, damage, or repairs may impact warranty coverage.

For accessory installation details, refer to the applicable instruction literature.

**NOTE:** Remove all shipping materials, loose parts bag, and literature before operating the furnace, see Table 2.

### **WARNING**

### FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death and/or property damage.

Do not install the furnace on its back or hang furnace with control compartment facing downward. Safety control operation will be adversely affected. Never connect return-air ducts to the back of the furnace, see Fig. 4.

Table 2 - Loose Parts Bag

DESCRIPTION	QUANTITY
Air Intake Pipe Flange	1
Vent Pipe Flange	1
Coupling Flange Gaskets	2
Sharp Tip Screws (Vent and Inlet Flanges)	10
Vent Pipe Coupling	1
Vent Pipe Coupling Clamps	2
Rubber Drain Elbow	1
Drain Tube Clamps	4
1/2-in. CPVC to 3/4-in. PVC Pipe Adapter	1
Gas Line Grommet	1
Junction Box Cover	1
Junction Box Base	1
Green Ground Screw	1
Blunt Tip Screws (Junction Box)	3
Thermostat Wire Grommet	1
Drain Extension Tube (Z-pipe) (Provided separately in furnace)	1

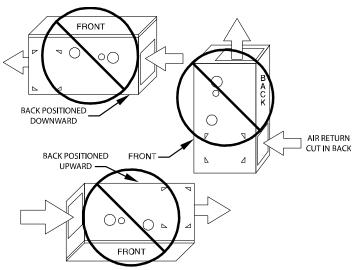


Fig. 4 – Prohibited Installations

A12182

### **WARNING**

### FIRE, INJURY OR DEATH HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death and/or property damage.

When the furnace is installed in a residential garage, the burners and burner ignition devices must be located at least 18 in. (457 mm) above the floor. The furnace must be located or protected to avoid damage by vehicles. When the furnace is installed in a public garage, airplane hangar, or other building having a hazardous atmosphere, the furnace must be installed in accordance with the current edition of NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1 or CAN/CSA B149.2, see Fig. 5.

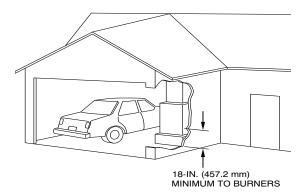


Fig. 5 – Installation in a Garage

A93044

### **CODES AND STANDARDS**

Follow all national and local codes and standards in addition to these instructions. The installation must comply with regulations of the serving gas supplier, local building, heating, plumbing, and other codes. In absence of local codes, the installation must comply with the national codes listed below and all authorities having jurisdiction.

In the United States and Canada, follow all codes and standards for the following:

### Safety

- US: Current edition of National Fuel Gas Code NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1 and the Installation Standards, Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems ANSI/NFPA 90B
- CANADA: Current edition of National Standard of Canada, Natural Gas and Propane Installation Code (NSCNGPIC) CAN/CSA B149.1

CONNECTED TO THE CONTROL PRIOR TO DISCHARGING

#### **General Installation**

- US: NFPA 54/ANSI Z223 and the NFPA 90B. For copies, contact the National Fire Protection Association Inc., Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269; or for only the NFPA 54/ANSI Z223 contact the American Gas Association, 400 N. Capitol, N.W., Washington DC 20001
- CANADA: NSCNGPIC. For a copy, contact Standard Sales, CSA International, 178 Rexdale Boulevard, Etobicoke (Toronto), Ontario, M9W 1R3, Canada

### **Combustion and Ventilation Air**

- US: Section 9.3 of the current edition of NFPA54/ANSI Z223.1 Air for Combustion and Ventilation
- CANADA: Part 8 of the current edition of CAN/CSA B149.1, Venting Systems and Air Supply for Appliances

### **Duct Systems**

 US and CANADA: Current edition of Air Conditioning Contractors Association (ACCA) Manual D, Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA), or American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) Fundamentals Handbook Chapter 35

### **Acoustical Lining and Fibrous Glass Duct**

 US and CANADA: Current edition of SMACNA, NFPA 90B as tested by UL Standard 181 for Class I Rigid Air Ducts

### **Gas Piping and Gas Pipe Pressure Testing**

- US: Current edition of NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1; Chapters 5, 6, 7, and 8 and national plumbing codes.
  - CANADA: Current edition of CAN/CSA-B149.1, Parts 4, 5, 6, and 9.

In the state of Massachusetts:

- This product must be installed by a licensed plumber or gas fitter.
- When flexible connectors are used, the maximum length shall not exceed 36 in. (914 mm).
- When lever type gas shutoffs are used they shall be T-handle type.
- The use of copper tubing for gas piping is not approved by the state of Massachusetts.

### **Electrical Connections**

- US: Current edition of National Electrical Code (NEC) NFPA 70
- CANADA: Current edition of Canadian Electrical Code CSA C22.1

### **Condensate Drain Connection**

- US: Current edition of National Standard Plumbing Code, Section 8.7.
- Canada: Current edition of National Plumbing Code of Canada in Canada.

# ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) PRECAUTIONS PROCEDURE

### ! CAUTION

### FURNACE RELIABILITY HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in unit component damage. Electrostatic discharge can affect electronic components. Take precautions during furnace installation and servicing to protect the furnace electronic control. Precautions will prevent electrostatic discharges from personnel and hand tools which are held during the procedure. These precautions will help to avoid exposing the control to electrostatic discharge by putting the furnace, the control, and the person at the same electrostatic potential.

 Disconnect all power to the furnace. Multiple disconnects may be required. DO NOT TOUCH THE CONTROL OR ANY WIRE YOUR BODY'S ELECTROSTATIC CHARGE TO GROUND.

- 2. Firmly touch the clean, unpainted, metal surface of the furnace chassis which is close to the control. Tools held in a person's hand during grounding will be satisfactorily discharged.
- 3. After touching the chassis, you may proceed to service the control or connecting wires as long as you do nothing to recharge your body with static electricity (for example; DO NOT move or shuffle your feet, do not touch ungrounded objects, etc.).
- 4. If you touch ungrounded objects (and recharge your body with static electricity), firmly touch a clean, unpainted metal surface of the furnace again before touching control or wires.
- 5. Use this procedure for installed and uninstalled (ungrounded) furnaces
- 6. Before removing a new control from its container, discharge your body's electrostatic charge to ground to protect the control from damage. If the control is to be installed in a furnace, follow items 1 through 4 before bringing the control or yourself in contact with the furnace. Put all used and new controls into containers before touching ungrounded objects.
- 7. An ESD service kit (available from commercial sources) may also be used to prevent ESD damage.

### **ACCESSORIES**

See Specification Sheet for a list of accessories for this product.

### **LOCATION**

### General

These furnaces are shipped with materials to assist in proper furnace installation. These materials are shipped in the main blower compartment. See Table 2 for loose parts bag contents.

This furnace must:

- be installed so the electrical components are protected from water.
- not be installed directly on any combustible material other than wood flooring (refer to SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS).
- be located close to the chimney or vent and attached to an air distribution system. Refer to Air Ducts section.
- be provided ample space for servicing and cleaning. Always comply
  with minimum fire protection clearances shown in Table 1 or on the
  furnace clearance to combustible construction label.

# **A** CAUTION

# PERSONAL INJURY AND/OR PROPERTY DAMAGE HAZARD

Improper use or installation of this furnace may result in premature furnace component failure. Unless otherwise prohibited, this gas furnace may be used for heating buildings under construction provided that:

- The furnace is permanently installed with all electrical wiring, piping, venting and ducting installed according to these installation instructions. A return air duct is provided, sealed to the furnace casing, and terminated outside the space containing the furnace. This prevents a negative pressure condition as created by the circulating air blower, causing a flame rollout and/or drawing combustion products into the structure.
- The furnace is controlled by a thermostat. It may not be "hot wired" to provide heat continuously to the structure without thermostatic control.
- Clean outside air is provided for combustion. This is to minimize the corrosive effects of adhesives, sealers and other construction materials. It also prevents the entrainment of drywall dust into combustion air, which can cause fouling and plugging of furnace components.
- The temperature of the return air to the furnace is maintained between 55°F (13°C) and 80°F (27°C), with no evening setback or shutdown. The use of the furnace while the structure is under construction is deemed to be intermittent operation per our installation instructions.
- The air temperature rise is within the rated rise range on the furnace rating plate, and the gas input rate has been set to the nameplate value.
- The filters used to clean the circulating air during the construction process must be either changed or thoroughly cleaned prior to occupancy.
- The furnace, ductwork and filters are cleaned as necessary to remove drywall dust and construction debris from all HVAC system components after construction is completed.
- Verify proper furnace operating conditions including ignition, gas input rate, air temperature rise, and venting according to these installation instructions.

### **WARNING**

# CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING / COMPONENT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death and unit component damage.

Corrosive or contaminated air may cause failure of parts containing flue gas, which could leak into the living space. Air for combustion must not be contaminated by halogen compounds, which include fluoride, chloride, bromide, and iodide. These elements can corrode heat exchangers and shorten furnace life. Air contaminants are found in aerosol sprays, detergents, bleaches, cleaning solvents, salts, air fresheners, and other household products. Do not install furnace in a corrosive or contaminated atmosphere. Make sure all combustion and circulating air requirements are met, in addition to all local codes and ordinances.

The following types of furnace installations may require OUTDOOR AIR for combustion due to chemical exposures:

- · Commercial buildings
- Buildings with indoor pools
- · Laundry rooms
- · Hobby or craft rooms
- · Chemical storage areas

If air is exposed to the following substances, it should not be used for combustion air, and outdoor air may be required for combustion:

- · Permanent wave solutions
- · Chlorinated waxes and cleaners
- Chlorine based swimming pool chemicals
- Water softening chemicals
- · De-icing salts or chemicals
- · Carbon tetrachloride
- Halogen type refrigerants
- Cleaning solvents (such as perchloroethylene)
- Printing inks, paint removers, varnishes, etc.
- · Hydrochloric acid
- · Cements and glues
- · Antistatic fabric softeners for clothes dryers
- · Masonry acid washing materials

All fuel-burning equipment must be supplied with air for fuel combustion. Sufficient air must be provided to avoid negative pressure in the equipment room or space. A positive seal must be made between the furnace cabinet and the return-air duct to prevent pulling air from the burner area.

### AIR FOR COMBUSTION AND VENTILATION

### Introduction

### **Direct Vent (2-pipe) Applications**

When the furnace is installed as a direct vent (2-pipe) furnace, no special provisions for air for combustion are required. However, other gas appliances installed in the space with the furnace may require outside air for combustion. Follow the guidelines below to ensure that other gas appliances have sufficient air for combustion.

### <u>Ventilated Combustion Air Applications (for U.S. Only)</u>

When the furnace is installed using the ventilated combustion air option, the attic or crawlspace must freely communicate with the outdoor to provide sufficient air for combustion. The combustion air pipe cannot be terminated in attics or crawlspaces that use ventilation fans designed to operate during the heating season. If ventilation fans are present in these areas, the combustion air pipe must terminate outdoors as a Direct Vent/2-Pipe system.

All air for combustion is piped directly to the furnace from a space that is well ventilated with outdoor air (such as an attic, crawl space, or equipment closet) and the space is well isolated from the living space or garage. In addition, other gas appliances installed in the space with the furnace may require outside air for combustion. Follow the guidelines below to ensure that the roof or crawlspace walls have sufficient free area to provide sufficient air for combustion and ventilation for the furnaces. The guidelines below can be used to ensure that other gas appliances have sufficient air for combustion.

Provisions for adequate combustion, ventilation, and dilution air must be provided in accordance with:

 U.S.A. Installations: Section 9.3 of the current edition of NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1, Air for Combustion and Ventilation and applicable provisions of the local building codes.

# **A** CAUTION

### FURNACE CORROSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in furnace damage.

Air for combustion must not be contaminated by halogen compounds, which include fluoride, chloride, bromide, and iodide. These elements can corrode heat exchangers and shorten furnace life. Air contaminants are found in aerosol sprays, detergents, bleaches, cleaning solvents, salts, air fresheners, and other household products.

# **MARNING**

#### CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. The operation of exhaust fans, kitchen ventilation fans, clothes dryers, attic exhaust fans or fireplaces could create a NEGATIVE PRESSURE CONDITION at the furnace. Make-up air MUST be provided for the ventilation devices, in addition to that required by the furnace. Refer to the Carbon Monoxide Poisoning Hazard warning in the venting section of these instructions to determine if an adequate amount of make-up air is available.

### **Outdoor Combustion Air Method**

- 1. Provide the space with sufficient air for proper combustion, ventilation, and dilution of flue gases using permanent horizontal or vertical duct(s) or opening(s) directly communicating with the outdoors or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors.
- Fig. 6 illustrates how to provide TWO OUTDOOR OPENINGS, one inlet and one outlet combustion and ventilation air opening, to the outdoors.
  - a. One opening MUST commence within 12 in. (300 mm) of the ceiling and the second opening MUST commence within 12 in. (300 mm) of the floor.
  - b. Size openings and ducts per Fig. 6 and Table 3.
  - c. TWO HORIZONTAL DUCTS require 1 sq. in. (645 sq. mm) of free area per 2,000 BTUh (1,100 mm2/kW) of combined input for all gas appliances in the space per Fig. 6 and Table 3.
  - d. TWO OPENINGS OR VERTICAL DUCTS require 1 sq. in. (645 sq. mm) of free area per 4,000 BTUh (550 mm2/kW) for combined input of all gas appliances in the space per Fig. 6 and Table 3.
- 3. ONE OUTDOOR OPENING requires:
  - a. 1 sq. in. (645 sq. mm) of free area per 3,000 BTUh (734 mm2/kW) for combined input of all gas appliances in the space per Fig. 6 and Table 3.
  - b. Not less than the sum of the areas of all vent connectors in the space.

The opening shall commence within 12 in. (300 mm) of the ceiling. Appliances in the space shall have clearances of at least 1 in. (25 mm) from the sides and back and 6 in. (150 mm) from the front. The opening shall directly communicate with the outdoors or shall communicate through a vertical or horizontal duct to the outdoors or spaces (crawl or attic) that freely communicate with the outdoors.

Table 3 - Minimum Free Area Required for Each Combustion Air Opening or Duct to Outdoors

FURNACE INPUT	TWO HORIZO (1 SQ. IN./2 (1,100 SQ	,000 BTUH)	SINGLE DUCT (1 SQ. IN./3, (734 SQ.	,000 BTUH)	TWO OPENINGS OR VERTICAL DUCTS (1 SQ. IN./4,000 BTUH) (550 SQ. MM/KW)		
(BTUH)	Free Area of Opening and Duct Sq. In (Sq. mm)	Round Duct In. (mm) Dia	Free Area of Opening and Duct Sq. In (Sq. mm)  Round Duct In. (mm) Dia		Free Area of Opening and Duct Sq. In (mm)	Round Duct In. (mm) Dia.	
40,000*	20 (12904)	5 (127)	14 (8696)	5 (127)	10 (6452)	4 (102)	
60,000	30 (19355)	6 (152)	20 (13043)	5 (127)	15 (9678)	5 (127)	
80,000	40 (25807)	7 (178)	27 (17391)	6 (152)	20 (12904)	5 (127)	
100,000	50 (32258)	8 (203)	34 (21739)	7 (178)	25 (16130)	6 (152)	
120,000	60 (38709)	9 (229)	40 (26087)	7 (178)	30 (19355)	6 (152)	
140,000*	70 (45161)	10 (254)	47 (30435)	8 (203)	35 (22581)	7 (178)	

<sup>\*</sup> Not all families have these models.

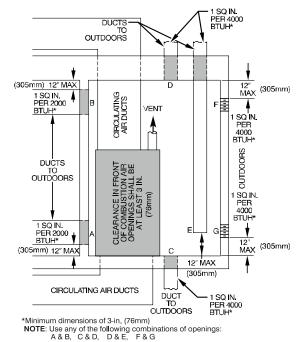
#### **EXAMPLES: Determining Free Area**

<b>FURNACE</b>		WATER HEATER		TOTAL INPUT		
100,000	+	30,000	=	(130,000 divided by 4,000)	=	32.5 Sq. In. for each two Vertical Ducts or Openings
60,000	+	40,000	=	(100,000 divided by 3,000)	=	33.3 Sq. In. for each Single Duct or Opening
80,000	+	30,000	=	(110,000 divided by 2,000)	=	55.0 Sq. In. for each two Horizontal Ducts

Table 4 - Minimum Space Volumes for 100% Combustion, Ventilation and Dilution Air from Outdoors

OTHER THAN FAN-ASSISTED TOTAL (1,000'S BTUH GAS INPUT RATE)				FAN-ASSISTED TOTAL (1,000'S BTUH GAS INPUT RATE)						
4011	30	40	50	40	60	80	100	120	140	
ACH				Sį	pace Volume Ft	3 (M3)				
0.60	1,050 (29.7)	1,400 (39.6)	1,750 (49.5)	1,400 (39.6)	1,500 (42.5)	2,000 (56.6)	2,500 (70.8)	3,000 (84.9)	3,500 (99.1)	
0.50	1,260 (35.6)	1,680 (47.5)	2,100 (59.4)	1,680 (47.5)	1,800 (51.0)	2,400 (67.9)	3,000 (84.9)	3,600 (101.9)	4,200 (118.9)	
0.40	1,575 (44.5)	2,100 (59.4)	2,625(74.3)	2,100 (59.4)	2,250 (63.7)	3,000 (84.9)	3,750 (106.1)	4,500 (127.3)	5,250 (148.6)	
0.30	2,100 (59.4)	2,800 (79.2)	3,500(99.1)	2,800 (79.2)	3,000 (84.9)	4,000 (113.2)	5,000 (141.5)	6,000 (169.8)	7,000 (198.1)	
0.20	3,150 (89.1)	4,200 (118.9)	5,250(148.6)	4,200 (118.9)	4,500 (127.3)	6,000 (169.8)	7,500 (212.2)	9,000 (254.6)	10,500 (297.1)	
0.10	6,300 (178.0)	8,400 (237.8)	10,500 (297.3)	8,400 (237.8)	9,000 (254.6)	12,000 (339.5)	15,000 (424.4)	18,000 (509.2)	21,000 (594.1)	
0.00	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	

NP = Not Permitted



L12F012 Fig. 6 – Air for Combustion, Ventilation, and Dilution for Outdoors

### **CONDENSATE TRAP**

### **Condensate Trap-Upflow Orientation**

When the furnace is installed in the upflow position, it is not necessary to relocate the condensate trap or associated tubing. Refer to Fig. 7 for upflow condensate trap information. Refer to Condensate Drain section for information how to install the condensate drain.

### **Condensate Trap-Downflow Orientation**

When the furnace is installed in the downflow position, the condensate trap will be initially located at the upper left corner of the collector box, as received from the factory. See the top image in Fig. 8. When the furnace is installed in the downflow orientation, the condensate trap must be relocated for proper condensate drainage. See the bottom image in Fig. 8.

To Relocate the Condensate Trap:

- Orient the furnace in the downflow position.
- Fig. 8 shows the condensate trap and tubing before and after relocation. Refer to Fig. 8 To begin the trap conversion.
- Refer to Condensate Drain section for information how to install the condensate drain.

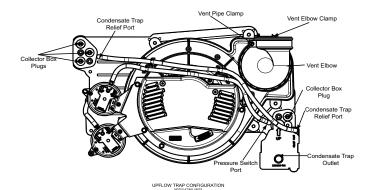
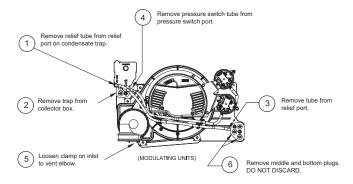


Fig. 7 – Upflow Trap Configuration (Appearance May Vary)

A11306



### Unconverted Factory Configuration As Viewed in the Downflow Orientation

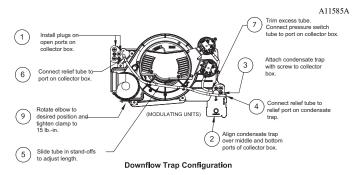


Fig. 8 – Downflow Trap Configuration (Appearance May Vary)

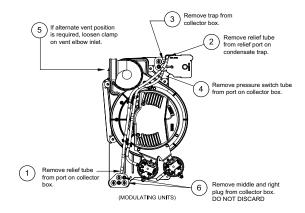
### **Condensate Trap-Horizontal Orientation**

When the furnace is installed in the horizontal right position, the condensate trap will be initially located at the bottom left corner of the collector box, as received from the factory. See the top image in Fig. 10. When the furnace is installed in the horizontal left position, the condensate trap will be initially located at the top of the collector box, as received from the factory. See the top image in Fig. 9. In both cases, the trap must be repositioned on the collector box for proper condensate drainage. See the bottom images in Fig. 10 and Fig. 9.

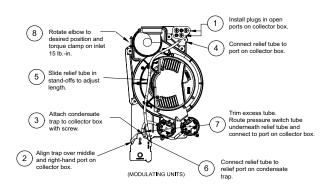
A field-supplied, accessory Horizontal Installation kit (trap grommet) is required for all direct-vent horizontal installations (only). The kit contains a rubber casing grommet designed to seal between the furnace casing and the condensate trap, see Fig. 11.

To Relocate the Condensate Trap:

- · Remove the knockout in the casing for the condensate trap.
- Install the grommet in the casing when required for direct-vent horizontal applications.
- Orient the furnace in the desired position.
- Allow for 2 in. (51 mm) of clearance underneath the furnace for the condensate trap and drain line.
- Fig. 10 shows the condensate trap and tubing before and after relocation in the horizontal right position.
- Fig. 9 shows the condensate trap and tubing before and after relocation in the horizontal left position.
- Refer to the appropriate figure to begin the trap conversion.
- Refer to Condensate Drain section for information how to install the condensate drain.



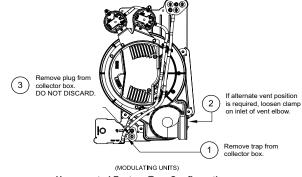
### Unconverted Factory Trap Configuration As Viewed in the Horizontal Left Orientation



**Horizontal Left Trap Configuration** 

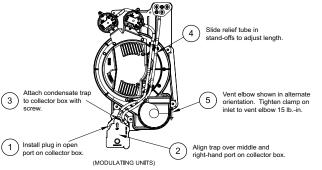
Fig. 9 – Horizontal Left Configuration (Appearance May Vary)

A11586



Unconverted Factory Trap Configuration As Viewed in the Horizontal Right Orientation

A11278A



Horizontal Right Trap Configuration

A11278B

Fig. 10 – Horizontal Right Trap Configuration (Appearance May Vary)

A11585B

### • NOTICE

The condensate trap extends below the side of the casing in the horizontal position. A minimum of 2-in. (51 mm) of clearance is required between the casing side and the furnace platform for the trap to extend out of the casing in the horizontal position. Allow at least 1/4-in. per foot (20 mm per meter) of slope down.

The field-supplied, accessory horizontal drain trap grommet is ONLY REQUIRED FOR DIRECT VENT APPLICATIONS. It it NOT required for applications using single-pipe or ventilated combustion air venting.

### **A** CAUTION

#### PROPERTY DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in burst water pipes and/or property damage.

If a condensate pump is installed, a plugged condensate drain or a failed pump may cause the furnace to shut down. Do not leave the home unattended during freezing weather without turning off water supply and draining water pipes or otherwise protecting against the risk of frozen pipes.

### CONDENSATE DRAIN CONNECTION

### **A** CAUTION

### FROZEN AND BURST WATER PIPE HAZARD

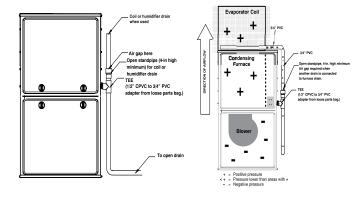
Failure to protect against the risk of freezing may result in property damage.

Special precautions MUST be made if installing furnace in an area which may drop below freezing. This can cause improper operation or damage to equipment. If furnace environment has the potential of freezing, the drain trap and drain line must be protected. The use of accessory drain trap heaters, electric heat tape and/or RV antifreeze is required for these installations.

DO NOT trap the drain line in any other location than at the condensate drain trap supplied with the furnace. If possible, DO NOT route the drain line where it may freeze. The drain line must terminate at an inside drain to prevent freezing of the condensate and possible property damage.

Special precautions MUST be made if installing furnace in an area which may drop below 32° F (0° C). This can cause improper operation or damage to the equipment. If the furnace environment has the potential of freezing, the drain trap and drain line must be protected. In areas where the temperature may be below 32° F (0° C), a Condensate Freeze Protection kit is strongly recommended. Refer to the Accessory section of the Specification Sheet for current kit number. If the Condensate Freeze Protection kit is not used, the factory-installed condensate trap must be adequately covered using a self-regulating, shielded and waterproof heat tape rated at 3 to 6 watt per foot (10 to 20 watt per meter) at 115 volt, 40°F (4°C). Failure to effectively secure the heat tape to the trap and sufficiently cover the trap with heat tape may result in freezing and cracking of the trap, causing a leak that results in property damage. In applications with potential for freezing, the above specified heat tape must also adequately cover/wrap the remaining condensate drain line to provide freeze protection. Wrap the drain trap and drain line with the heat tape and secure with appropriate plastic ties. Follow the heat tape manufacturer's recommendations. Prime the trap before furnace operation.

The condensate drain line must be supported and/or secured per local codes. Supports and clamps should be spaced to prevent the drain line from sagging or being dislocated from the furnace or termination point. In the absence of local codes, consult the current edition of the National Standard Plumbing Code, in the U.S. or the current edition National Plumbing Code of Canada in Canada.



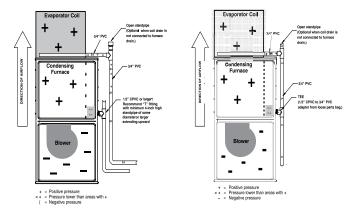
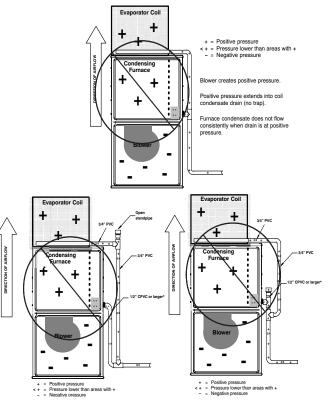


Fig. 11 – Example of Field Drain Attachment

A170135



 $\textbf{Fig. 12-Example of Field Drain Attachment (Not Allowed)}^{\text{A14532}}$ 

#### **Upflow/Downflow Orientation**

In the Upflow or Downflow orientation, the condensate trap is inside the furnace casing. The condensate drain must be routed from the trap through the furnace casing. The condensate drain can be routed through the left or right side of the casing. (The left or right side is as you are viewing/facing the furnace from the front.)

An indoor coil condensate drain or humidifier drain can be connected to the external furnace condensate drain provided:

- · The drains are not hard piped together, and
- · There is an air gap at the point where the two drain lines meet or
- All condensate piping is at least 3/4-in. PVC and there is a relief tee at the top of condensate drain piping as shown in Fig. 11.

**NOTE:** On narrower casings, it may be easier to remove the condensate trap, connect the drain line components and re-install the condensate trap. Read the steps thoroughly to familiarize yourself with the required steps.

### For Right Side Condensate Drain:

- Remove the 7/8-in. knock-out from the right side of the casing. See Fig. 14 for suggested knockout removal technique.
- Remove the pre-formed rubber drain elbow and two spring clamps from the loose parts bag.
- 3. Slide a spring clamp 1-in. (25 mm) down the plain end (the end without the formed grommet) of the drain elbow.
- 4. From inside the casing, insert the formed grommet end of the elbow through the 7/8-in. knockout in the casing.
- 5. Pull the grommet through the casing from the outside until it is seated in the knockout
- Attach the plain end of the drain elbow to the outlet stub on the drain trap. Secure the drain elbow to the trap with the spring clamp.

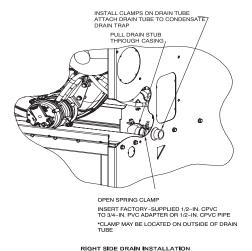


Fig. 13 - Formed Rubber Drain Grommet

L12F019B

### **A** CAUTION

#### **CUT HAZARD**

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury.

Sheet metal parts may have sharp edges or burrs. Use care and wear appropriate protective clothing, safety glasses and gloves when handling parts, and servicing furnaces.

### Fig. 14 - Knockout Removal

The remaining drain line can be constructed from field supplied 1/2-in. CPVC or 3/4-in. PVC pipe, in compliance with local building codes. A factory-supplied 1/2-in. CPVC to 3/4-in. PVC adapter is supplied in the loose parts bag for use as required.

- 7. Install the adapter or connect the 1/2-in. CPVC pipe by sliding a spring clamp over the open end of the grommet on the outside the furnace casing.
- 8. Open the spring clamp and insert the long end of the adapter or the 1/2-in. CPVC pipe into the outlet stub on the drain tube.
- Connect additional condensate piping to a code-approved drain, or
  to a condensate pump approved for use with acidic furnace
  condensate and compatible with mineral and vegetable oils, such as
  canola oil.

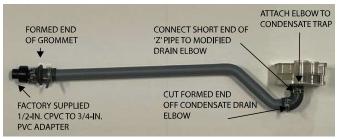
Allow at least 1/4-in. per foot (20 mm per meter) of slope down and away from the furnace in horizontal sections of drain line.

TIP FROM CONTRACTORS: Contractors have found that temporarily removing the inducer assembly in upflow applications while performing the steps, below, makes upflow left-side drain connections easier.

#### For Left Side Condensate Drain Connection:

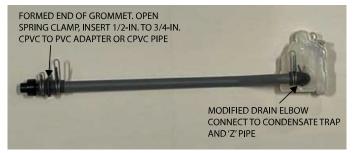
- For left side condensate drainage, the drain line is routed from the condensate trap, behind the inducer (upflow) or gas valve (downflow) and out through the left side of the furnace casing. A pre-formed 1/2-in. CPVC "Z-pipe" is provided with the furnace. The Z-pipe is long enough to extend across the casing for drain connections.
- Locate the Z-pipe. Remove the pre-formed drain elbow and four spring clamps from the loose parts bag.
- 3. The Z-pipe is connected to the condensate trap and the outside of the furnace by modifying the formed rubber drain elbow as shown in Fig. 16.
- 4. Remove the formed grommet from the rubber drain elbow by cutting the elbow along the vertical line located about 1-3/8 in. (35 mm) away from the formed grommet, see Fig. 16. DO NOT DISCARD THE FORMED GROMMET OR THE RUBBER ELBOW. Both of these pieces will be used.

A11342A



A220966

# <u>Top View</u> <u>Drain Elbow "Z" Discharge Pipe for Left Side</u> <u>Drain is Routed behind Inducer</u>



A230060

# Front View Left Side Drain Pipe Orientation for Condensate <u>Discharge</u>

**NOTE:** Remove Inducer Housing for easier access, if desired.

# Fig. 15 – Drain Trap Connection and Routing (Appearance may vary)

Assemble and route the drain line to the opposite side of the furnace as detailed below:

- Remove the inducer housing screws, disconnect harnesses, and set inducer housing aside. See Fig. 14 for suggested knockout or plug removal technique.
- 6. Remove condensate trap.
- Remove 7/8-in. knockout or plug from the left side of the casing.
   See Fig. 14 for suggested knockout or plug removal technique.
- 8. Starting from inside the casing, pull the grommet through the hole until it is seated in the hole.
- 9. Assemble the Z-pipe, rubber elbow and condensate trap external to the unit by securing the rubber elbow to the drain trap and the Z-pipe with spring clamps.
- Slide the spring clamp for the Z-pipe/grommet connection over the Z-tube.
- Adjust the Z-pipe orientation prior to final installation to ensure the Z-pipe will be as horizontal as possible and NOT resting on any sheet metal parts.
- 12. Align the Z-pipe with the long end of the grommet inside the furnace and insert slightly. The angled end of the tube at the other side of the casing should be facing the front of the furnace.
- 13. Slide a spring clamp over the end of the remaining rubber drain elbow.
- 14. Re-attach the condensate trap with Z-pipe assembly. Make fine adjustments to the Z-pipe orientation as needed to ensure the Z-pipe is as horizontal as possible. Condensate trap screws should be torqued to 17.5 +/- 2.5 in-lbs. Do NOT use power tools and torque to a maximum of 20 in-lbs.
- 15. In both upflow and downflow orientations, the Z-pipe should NOT be resting on any sheet metal parts.

16. Replace inducer housing. Inducer housing screws should be torqued to 17.5 +/- 2.5 in-lbs. Do **NOT** use power tools and torque to a maximum of 20 in-lbs.

The remaining drain line can be constructed from field supplied 1/2-in. CPVC or 3/4-in. PVC pipe, in compliance with local building codes. A factory-supplied 1/2-in. CPVC to 3/4-in. PVC adapter is supplied in the loose parts bag for use as required.

- 17. Install the adapter or connect the 1/2-in. CPVC pipe by sliding a spring clamp over the open end of the grommet on the outside the furnace casing.
- 18. Open the spring clamp and insert the long end of the adapter or the 1/2-in. CPVC pipe into the outlet stub of the grommet.
- 19. Connect additional condensate piping to a code-approved drain, or to a condensate pump approved for use with acidic furnace condensate and compatible with mineral and vegetable oils, such as canola oil.

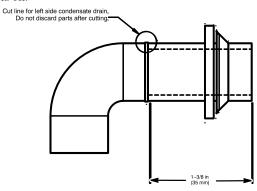


Fig. 16 - Modify Rubber Drain Elbow

A11581

Allow at least 1/4-in. per foot (20 mm per meter) of slope down and away from the furnace in horizontal sections of drain line.

### **NOTICE**

The field-supplied, accessory horizontal drain trap grommet is ONLY REQUIRED FOR DIRECT VENT APPLICATIONS. It is NOT required for applications using single-pipe or ventilated combustion air venting.

**TIP FROM CONTRACTORS:** When installing the furnace horizontally, use the entire drain elbow (that is, do NOT cut as shown in Fig. 16 to connect the trap to the drain line. This helps to prevent bumps and shocks to the drain line from damaging the furnace drain trap. Avoid misalignment of the drain pipe which may cause kinks in the elbow.

### **Horizontal Orientation**

- 1. The condensate trap outlet extends 2-in. (51 mm) below the furnace casing. Leave enough clearance between the furnace and the furnace platform for the trap.
- To allow for servicing the trap, the condensate drain elbow in the loose parts bag can be used to make a coupler to allow for future service of the condensate trap and drain line.
- Remove the knock-out for the condensate trap in the side of the casing.
- 4. Install the drain trap grommet in the casing if required for direct-vent applications. If necessary, remove the trap, install the grommet and re-install the trap.
- Remove the pre-formed rubber drain elbow, and two spring clamps from the loose parts bag.
- Connect the full or modified elbow and/or grommet to the outlet of the condensate trap with one spring clamp. Avoid misalignment of the drain pipe which may cause kinks in the elbow or grommet.

- 7. The remaining drain line can be constructed from field-supplied 1/2-in. CPVC or 3/4-in. PVC pipe, in compliance with local building codes. A factory-supplied 1/2-in. CPVC to 3/4-in. PVC adapter is supplied in the loose parts bag for use as required.
- 8. Install the adapter or connect the 1/2-in. CPVC pipe by sliding a spring clamp over the open end of the elbow or grommet on the outside the furnace casing.
- 9. Open the spring clamp and insert the long end of the adapter or the 1/2-in. CPVC pipe into the outlet stub on the drain tube.
- 10. Connect additional condensate piping to a code-approved drain, or to a condensate pump approved for use with acidic furnace condensate and compatible with mineral and vegetable oils, such as canola oil.

Allow at least 1/4-in. per foot (20 mm per meter) of slope down and away from the furnace in horizontal sections of drain line.

NOTE: Trap grommet is required only for direct-vent applications.

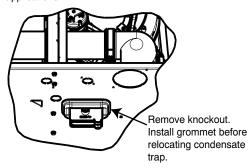


Fig. 17 – Horizontal Drain Trap Grommet

A11582

### **INSTALLATION**

### **A** NOTICE

This furnace is certified to leak 2% or less of nominal air conditioning CFM delivered when pressurized to 1-in. water column with all present air inlets, including bottom closure in upflow and horizontal applications, air outlets, and plumbing and electrical ports sealed.

### **Upflow Installation**

**NOTE:** The furnace must be pitched as shown in Fig. 18 for proper condensate drainage.

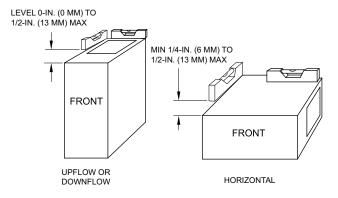


Fig. 18 - Furnace Pitch Requirements

#### A11237

### **Supply Air Connections**

For a furnace not equipped with a cooling coil, the outlet duct shall be provided with a removable access panel. This opening shall be accessible when the furnace is installed and shall be of such a size that the heat exchanger can be viewed for possible openings using light

assistance or a probe can be inserted for sampling the air stream. The cover attachment shall prevent leaks.

Connect supply-air duct to flanges on furnace supply-air outlet. Bend flange upward to 90° with wide duct pliers, see Fig. 19. The supply-air duct must be connected to ONLY the furnace supply-outlet-air duct flanges or air conditioning coil casing (when used). DO NOT cut main furnace casing side to attach supply air duct, humidifier, or other accessories. All supply-side accessories MUST be connected to duct external to furnace main casing.

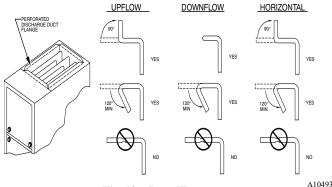


Fig. 19 - Duct Flanges

### **Return Air Connections**

## **WARNING**

### FIRE HAZARD

A failure to follow this warning could cause personal injury, death and/or property damage.

Never connect return-air ducts to the back of the furnace. Follow instructions below.

The return-air duct must be connected to bottom, sides (left or right), or a combination of bottom and side(s) of main furnace casing. Bypass humidifier may be attached into unused return air side of the furnace casing, see Fig. 20, Fig. 21, Fig. 22.

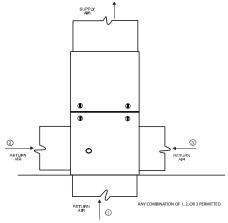


Fig. 20 – Upflow Return Air Configurations and Restrictions  $^{\rm A11036}$ 

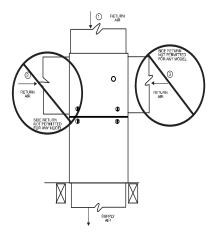


Fig. 21 – Downflow Return Air Configurations and Restrictions

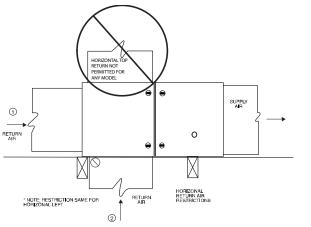
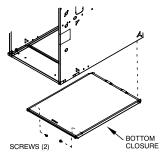


Fig. 22 – Horizontal Return Air Configurations and Restrictions

### **Bottom Return Air Inlet**

These furnaces are shipped with bottom closure panel installed in bottom return-air opening. Remove this panel when bottom return air is used. This panel may be used as the bottom closure of an accessory bottom return air box, or discarded. To remove bottom closure panel, see Fig. 23.



Representative drawing. Models may vary.

- 1. Lay furnace on the back or side
- Remove the two (2) screws that secure the bottom closure panel to the furnace casing and remove the panel

Fig. 23 – Removing Bottom Closure Panel (2 Screws)

### Side Return Air Inlet

These furnaces are shipped with bottom closure panel installed in bottom return-air opening. This panel MUST be in place when only side return

air is used. Where required by code, seal bottom closure to furnace with tape, mastic or other durable sealing method.

**NOTE:** Side return-air openings can be used in UPFLOW and some HORIZONTAL configurations. Do not use side return-air openings in DOWNFLOW configuration, see Fig. 20, Fig. 21, Fig. 22.

### **Downflow Installation**

### **WARNING**

### FIRE AND PROPERTY HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in equipment damage, personal injury, or property damage.

When furnace is installed in a downflow application, make sure water lines and other sources of water cannot drip or fail in such a way that water can collect on the blower motor, wiring, and furnace control board.

**NOTE:** The furnace must be pitched as shown in Fig. 18 for proper condensate drainage.

### **Supply Air Connections**

A11037

**NOTE:** For downflow applications, this furnace is approved for use on combustible flooring when any one of the following 3 accessories are used:

- · Manufacturer's downflow combustible floor subbase
- · Manufacturer's cased evaporator coil
- · Manufacturer's evaporator coil casing
- 1. Determine application being installed from Table 4.
- 2. Construct hole in floor per Table 4 and Fig. 24.
- 3. Construct plenum to dimensions specified in Table 4 and Fig. 24.
- 4. If downflow subbase is used, install as shown. If manufacturer's cased evaporator coil or coil casing is used, install as shown in Fig. 24.

**NOTE:** It is recommended that the perforated supply-air duct flanges be completely removed from furnace when installing the furnace on a factory-supplied cased coil or coil box. To remove the supply-air duct flange, use wide duct pliers or hand seamers to bend flange back and forth until it breaks off. Be careful of sharp edges, see Fig. 19.

The return-air duct must be connected to return-air opening (bottom inlet). DO NOT cut into casing sides (left or right). Bypass humidifier connections should be made at ductwork or coil casing sides exterior to furnace, see Fig. 21.

### Bottom Return Air Inlet

These furnaces are shipped with bottom closure panel installed in bottom return-air opening. Remove and discard this panel when bottom return air is used in downflow applications. To remove bottom closure panel, see Fig. 23.

### **Horizontal Installation**

**NOTE:** The furnace must be pitched forward as shown in Fig. 18 for proper condensate drainage.

### ! WARNING

# FIRE, EXPLOSION, AND CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, or property damage.

Do not install the furnace on its back or hang furnace with control compartment facing downward. Safety control operation will be adversely affected. Never connect return-air ducts to the back of the furnace.

### **A** CAUTION

### MINOR PROPERTY HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in minor property damage. Local codes may require a drain pan under entire furnace and condensate trap when a condensing furnace is used in an attic application or over a finished ceiling.

Table 5 – Opening Dimensions - In. (mm)

FURNACE		PLENUM	OPENING	FLOOR (	PENING
CASING WIDTH IN. (mm)	APPLICATION	Α	В	С	D
	Upflow Applications on Combustible or Noncombustible Flooring	12-11/16	21-5/8	13-5/16	22-1/4
	(subbase not required)	(322)	(549)	(338)	(565)
	Downflow Applications on Noncombustible Flooring	12-9/16	19	13-3/16	19-5/8
14–3/16 <sup>*</sup>	(subbase not required)	(319)	(483)	(335)	(498)
(360)	Downflow applications on combustible flooring	11-13/16	19	13-7/16	20-5/8
	(subbase required)	(300)	(483)	(341)	(524)
	Downflow Applications on Combustible Flooring with coil assembly or	12-5/16	19	13-5/16	20
	coil box (subbase not required)	(313)	(483)	(338)	(508)
	Upflow Applications on Combustible or Noncombustible Flooring	16	21-5/8	16-5/8	22-1/4
	(subbase not required)	(406)	(549)	(422)	(565)
	Downflow Applications on Noncombustible Flooring	15-7/8	19	16-1/2	19-5/8
17–1/2	(subbase not required)	(403)	(483)	(419)	(498)
(445)	Downflow applications on combustible flooring	15-1/8	19	16-3/4	20-5/8
	(subbase required)	(384)	(483)	(425)	(524)
	Downflow Applications on Combustible Flooring with coil assembly or	15-1/2	19	16-1/2	20
	coil box (subbase not required)	(394)	(483)	(419)	(508)
	Upflow Applications on Combustible or Noncombustible Flooring	19-1/2	21-5/8	20-1/8	22-1/4
	(subbase not required)	(495)	(549)	(511)	(565)
	Downflow Applications on Noncombustible Flooring	19-3/8	19	20	19-5/8
21	(subbase not required)	(492)	(483)	(508)	(498)
(533)	Downflow applications on combustible flooring	18-5/8	19	20-1/4	20-5/8
	(subbase required)	(473)	(483)	(514)	(524)
	Downflow Applications on Combustible Flooring with coil assembly or	19	19	20	20
	coil box (subbase not required)	(483)	(483)	(508)	(508)

<sup>\*.</sup> Not all families have these models

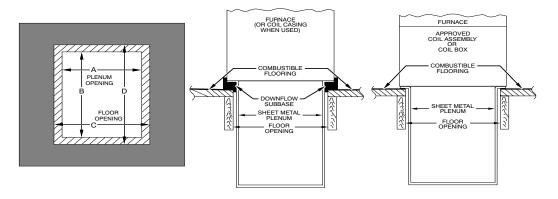


Fig. 24 - Installation on Combustible Flooring

A10491

# **A** CAUTION

### **CUT HAZARD**

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury.

Sheet metal parts may have sharp edges or burrs. Use care and wear appropriate protective clothing, safety glasses and gloves when handling parts, and servicing furnaces.

Connect supply-air duct to supply-air outlet on furnace. Bend flange inward past 90° with wide duct pliers, see Fig. 19. The supply-air duct

must be connected to ONLY the furnace supply outlet or air conditioning coil casing (when used). When installed on combustible material, supply-air duct must be connected to ONLY the factory-approved accessory subbase, or a factory-approved air conditioning coil casing. DO NOT cut main furnace casing to attach supply side air duct, humidifier, or other accessories. All supply-side accessories MUST be connected to duct external to furnace casing.

#### **Return Air Connections**

# **MARNING**

#### FIRE HAZARD

A failure to follow this warning could cause personal injury, death and/or property damage.

Never connect return-air ducts to the back of the furnace. Follow instructions below.

The furnace can be installed horizontally in an attic or crawlspace on either the left-hand (LH) or right-hand (RH) side. The furnace can be hung from floor joists, rafters or trusses or installed on a non-combustible platform, blocks, bricks or pad.

### **Supply Air Connections**

For a furnace not equipped with a cooling coil, the outlet duct shall be provided with a removable access panel. This opening shall be accessible when the furnace is installed and shall be of such a size that the heat exchanger can be viewed for possible openings using light assistance or a probe can be inserted for sampling the air stream. The cover attachment shall prevent leaks.

Connect supply-air duct to flanges on furnace supply-air outlet. Bend flange upward to 90° with wide duct pliers, see Fig. 19. The supply-air duct must be connected to ONLY the furnace supply-outlet-air duct flanges or air conditioning coil casing (when used). DO NOT cut main furnace casing side to attach supply air duct, humidifier, or other accessories. All accessories MUST be connected to duct external to furnace main casing.

### **Return Air Connections**

The return-air duct may be connected to bottom of the furnace. The side of casing that faces downward may also be used for return air connection. A combination of the bottom and downward facing side may also be used. The upward facing side of the casing cannot be used as a return air connection, see Fig. 22.

#### **Bottom Return Air Inlet**

These furnaces are shipped with bottom closure panel installed in bottom return-air opening. Remove this panel when bottom return air is used. This panel may be used as a roll-out shield or discard. To remove bottom closure panel, see Fig. 23.

### Side Return Air Inlet

These furnaces are shipped with bottom closure panel installed in bottom return-air opening. This panel MUST be in place when side return air inlet(s) are used without a bottom return air inlet.

Not all horizontal furnaces are approved for side return air connections, see Fig. 22. Where required by code, seal bottom closure to furnace with tape, mastic or other durable sealing method.

### Filter Arrangement

# **MARNING**

# FIRE, CARBON MONOXIDE AND POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, personal injury or

Never operate a furnace without a filter or filtration device installed. Never operate a furnace with filter or filtration device access doors removed.

### Filter and Return Duct Sizing

Pressure drop must be taken into account when sizing filters, filter racks, IAQ devices, and associated system ductwork. See Table 6 for a comparison of Pressure Drop (initial/clean resistance to airflow) versus Airflow for a variety of filter media types and sizes. These are

representative numbers. Consult the filter or IAQ device manufacturers' specification sheet for performance data for a particular filter media or IAQ device.

FURNACE	FILTER		
CASING WIDTH	SIDE RETURN	BOTTOM RETURN	FILTER TYPE
17-1/2 (445)	16 x 25 x 3/4 (406 x 635 x 19)	16 x 25 x 3/4 (406 x 635 x 19)	Washable*
21 (533)	16 x 25 x 3/4 (406 x 635 x 19)	20 x 25 x 3/4 (508 x 635 x 19)	Washable*
24-1/2 (622)	16 x 25 x 3/4 (406 x 635 x 19)	24 x 25 x 3/4 (610 x 635 x 19)	Washable*

\*. Recommended to maintain air filter face velocity. See Specification Sheet for part number.

Design the filter and associated ductwork for the best match of pressure drop versus filter size. Best practice usually chooses filter systems with pressure drops under 0.2 in. W.C. (50 Pa), with the best blower electrical efficiency and system airflow performance occurring with filter pressure drops under 0.1 in. W.C. (25 Pa).

### **NOTICE**

Design the duct system FIRST to determine how much pressure drop may be allowed in the filter system. See the Air Ducts section. Excessive filter pressure drop often compromises system airflow and duct performance, causes inadequate airflow to the furthest ends of the duct system, as well as causes excess noise and higher than anticipated electrical consumption.

Provide duct transitions, as required, to smoothly transition airflow from the return duct system to the filter (or IAQ device) to the furnace when the dimensions of the ductwork or furnace return air opening do not match the required filter or IAQ device dimensions. See the instructions supplied with factory-accessory duct adapters.

- Special Base NAHA01101SB
- Cased Coil Assembly EAM4X, END4X, ENW4X, EAD4X

There are no provisions for an internal filter in these furnaces. An external filter rack is required and is purchased separately. A field supplied accessory air cleaner may also be used in place of the filter rack.

For upflow applications, the filter can be installed on either side of the furnace, the bottom of the furnace or any combination of side and bottom of the furnace, see Fig. 20.

For downflow applications, the filter rack (or field supplied accessory air cleaner) must only be connected to the bottom opening on the furnace, see Fig. 21.

For horizontal applications, the filter rack (or field supplied accessory air cleaner) can be connected to the bottom opening on the furnace. For side return use in the horizontal position, see Fig. 22. If both side and bottom openings are used in Fig. 22, each opening used will require a filter.

A filter rack or any field supplied accessory air cleaner can also be installed in the common return duct prior to entering the return air opening in any orientation.

Refer to the instructions supplied with the Filter Rack or accessory air filter for assembly and other details.

Due to the relatively high pressure drops of 1-in (25 mm) thick after-market filter media, it is recommended that the filtration system be designed for at least 2-in (51 mm) thick media.

**TIPS FROM CONTRACTORS:** Install a media cabinet capable of incorporating a 4-in (102 mm) thick media filter. This allows room for future upgrades to other IAQ devices.

**Table 6 – Filter Information** 

14 x 25 Filter Factory-Accy			Representative After-Market Filter Media <sup>*</sup>								
14 X Z	5 Filter	Wasi		Fiberglass*				Pleated*			
CFM	L/s	(1-in. / 2.5 cm)		(1-in. /	(1-in. / 2.5 cm) (2-in. / 5 cm)		(1-in. /	2.5 cm)	(2-in.	<sup>7</sup> 5 cm)	
600	(283)	0.04	(12)	0.07	(17)	0.10	(26)	0.24	(60)	0.16	(40)
800	(378)	0.06	(15)	0.10	(25)	0.15	(39)	0.34	(85)	0.23	(59)
1000	(472)	0.07	(18)	0.13	(34)	0.21	(52)	-	-	0.32	(81)
1200	(566)	0.08	(20)	0.17	(43)	0.27	(68)	-	-	-	-

16x 25 Filter Factory-Accy				Representative After-Market Filter Media*								
10X 2	o Filler	Wasi	nable		Fiberglass*			Pleated <sup>*</sup>				
CFM	L/s	(1-in. / 2.5 cm)		(1-in. /	in. / 2.5 cm) (2-in. / 5 cm)		(1-in. / 2.5 cm)		(2-in. / 5 cm)			
600	(283)	0.04	(10)	0.06	(15)	0.09	(22)	0.20	(51)	0.13	(34)	
800	(378)	0.05	(13)	0.08	(21)	0.13	(32)	0.29	(72)	0.20	(49)	
1000	(472)	0.06	(16)	0.11	(28)	0.17	(43)	-	-	0.27	(67)	
1200	(566)	0.07	(18)	0.14	(36)	0.22	(56)	-	-	-	-	
1400	(661)	0.08	(21)	0.18	(45)	0.28	(70)	-	-	-	-	
1600	(755)	0.09	(23)	0.21	(54)	-	-	-	-	-	-	
1800	(850)	0.10	(25)	0.26	(64)	-	-	-	-	-	-	

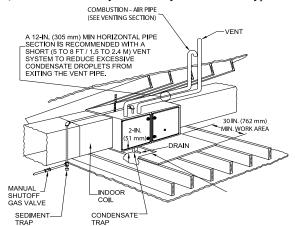
20 0	F F:14	Factor	у-Ассу			Rep	resentative Aft	er-Market Filte	er Media <sup>*</sup>		
20 X 2	20 x 25 Filter Washable		Fiberglass*				Pleated <sup>*</sup>				
CFM	(L/s)	(1-in. /	2.5 cm)	(1-in. /	2.5 cm)	(2-in. /	/ 5 cm)	(1-in. /	2.5 cm)	(2-in. /	' 5 cm)
800	(378)	0.04	(11)	0.06	(16)	0.09	(24)	0.22	(55)	0.15	(37)
1000	(472)	0.05	(13)	0.08	(21)	0.13	(32)	0.29	(72)	0.20	(49)
1200	(566)	0.06	(15)	0.11	(27)	0.16	(41)	-	-	0.25	(63)
1400	(661)	0.07	(17)	0.13	(33)	0.20	(51)	-	-	0.31	(79)
1600	(755)	0.08	(19)	0.16	(40)	0.24	(61)	-	-	-	-
1800	(850)	0.08	(21)	0.18	(47)	0.29	(73)	-	-	-	-
2000	(944)	0.09	(23)	0.21	(54)	-	-	-	-	-	-
2200	(1038)	0.09	(24)	0.25	(62)	-	-	-	-	-	-

05 0	F F:14	Factor	y-Accy		Representative After-Market Filter Media <sup>*</sup>						
25 X 2	25 x 25 Filter Washable				Fib	erglass <sup>*</sup>		Pleated <sup>*</sup>			
CFM	L/s	(1-in. /	2.5 cm)	(1-in. /	2.5 cm)	(2-in. /	<sup>7</sup> 5 cm)	(1-in. /	2.5 cm)	(2-in. /	5 cm)
800	(378)	0.03	(9)	0.05	(12)	0.07	(18)	0.17	(43)	0.11	(28)
1000	(472)	0.04	(11)	0.06	(16)	0.09	(24)	0.22	(55)	0.15	(37)
1200	(566)	0.05	(13)	0.08	(20)	0.12	(31)	0.27	(68)	0.18	(47)
1400	(661)	0.06	(15)	0.10	(24)	0.15	(38)	-	-	0.23	(58)
1600	(755)	0.06	(16)	0.11	(29)	0.18	(45)	-	-	0.28	(69)
1800	(850)	0.07	(18)	0.13	(34)	0.21	(53)	-	-	-	-
2000	(944)	0.08	(19)	0.16	(39)	0.24	(61)	-	-	-	-
2200	(1038)	0.08	(21)	0.18	(45)	0.28	(70)	-	-	-	-

<sup>\*.</sup> Representative estimates from filter manufacturer data sheets.

See manufacturers' specifications for pressure drop versus airflow data for specific filter media.

If the filter size that you are looking for is not contained in Table 5, refer to Table 6 for a comparison of Pressure Drop (initial/clean resistance to airflow) versus Face Velocity for a variety of filter media types.



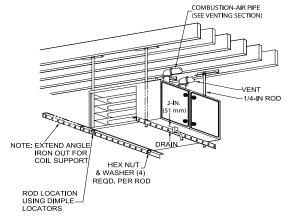
ROLLOUT PROTECTION REQUIRED
Install 12" x 22" (305x559 mm) sheet metal in front of burner compartment area. The sheet metal MUST extend underneath the furnace casing by 1-in. (25 mm) with the door removed. The bottom closure panel may be used for flame roll-out protection when bottom of furnace is used for return air connection.

NOTE: FURNACE SHOWN AS DIRECT VENT APPLICATION. REFER TO THE VENTING SECTION FOR ALLOWABLE VENT CONFIGURATIONS

A150580

**NOTE:** Local codes may require a drain pan and condensate trap when a condensing furnace is installed over a finished ceiling.

Fig. 25 – Working Platform for Attic Installation



ROLLOUT PROTECTION REQUIRED

Install 12" x 22" (204 x 559 mm) sheet metal in front of and above the burner compartment area. The sheet metal MUST extend above the furnace casing by 1-in. (25 mm with the door removed. A 1-in. (25 mm) dearance minimum between top of furnace and combustible material is required. The entire length of furnace must be supported when furnace is used in horizontal position to

NOTE: FURNACE SHOWN IS A DIRECT-VENT APPLICATION. REFER TO THE VENTING SECTION FOR ALLOWABLE VENT CONFIGURATIONS.

NOTE: Local codes may require a drain pan and condensate trap when a condensing furnace is installed over a finished ceiling.

Fig. 26 - Suspended Furnace Installation

### Leveling Legs (If Desired)

In upflow position with side return inlet(s), leveling legs may be used, see Fig. 27. Install field-supplied, 5/16 x 1-1/2 in. (8 x 38 mm) (max) corrosion-resistant machine bolts, washers and nuts.

**NOTE:** Bottom closure must be used when leveling legs are used. It may be necessary to remove and reinstall bottom flash to install leveling legs. To remove bottom closure panel, see Fig. 23.

To install leveling legs:

- Position furnace on its back. Locate and drill a hole in each bottom corner of furnace.
- 2. For each leg, install nut on bolt and then install bolt with nut in hole. (Install flat washer if desired.)
- 3. Install another nut on other side of furnace base. (Install flat washer if desired.)
- Adjust outside nut to provide desired height, and tighten inside nut to secure arrangement.
- 5. Reinstall bottom closure panel if removed.

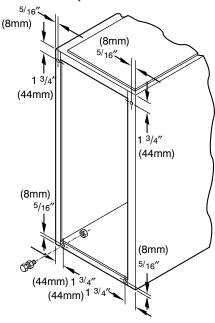


Fig. 27 – Leveling Legs

### **Location Relative to Cooling Equipment**

The cooling coil must be installed parallel with, or on the downstream side of the unit to avoid condensation in the heat exchangers. When installed parallel with the furnace, dampers or other flow control must prevent chilled air from entering the furnace. If the dampers are manually operated, they must be equipped with means to prevent operation of either unit unless the damper is in the full-heat or full-cool position.

### **Platform Furnace Support**

Construct working platform at location where all required furnace clearances are met, see Table 1 and Fig. 25. For furnaces with 1-in. (25 mm) clearance requirement on side, set furnace on non-combustible blocks, bricks or angle iron. For crawlspace installations, if the furnace is not suspended from the floor joists, the ground underneath furnace must be level and the furnace set on blocks or bricks.

### Suspended Furnace Support

The furnace must be supported under the entire length of the furnace with threaded rod and angle iron, see Fig. 26. Secure angle iron to bottom of furnace as shown.

### **Roll-Out Protection**

Provide a minimum 12-in. x 22-in. (305 x 559 mm) piece of sheet metal for flame roll-out protection in front of burner area for furnaces closer

than 12-in. (305 mm) above the combustible deck or suspended furnaces closer than 12-in. (305 mm) to joists. The sheet metal MUST extend underneath the furnace casing by 1-in. (25 mm) with the door removed.

The bottom closure panel on furnaces of widths 17-1/2-in. (445 mm) and larger may be used for flame roll-out protection when bottom of furnace is used for return air connection. See Fig. 25 for proper orientation of roll-out shield.

### **AIR DUCTS**

# **A** NOTICE

Many states, provinces and localities are considering or have implemented standards and/or restrictions on duct sizing practices, ductwork leakage, and/or ductwork thermal, airflow and electrical efficiencies. CONSULT LOCAL CODE OFFICIALS for ductwork design and performance requirements in your area.

### **General Requirements**

The duct system should be designed and sized according to accepted national standards such as those published by: Air Conditioning Contractors Association (ACCA Manual D), Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA) or American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) or consult *The Air Systems Design Guidelines* reference tables available from your local distributor. The duct system should be sized to handle the required system design CFM at the design external static pressure. The furnace airflow rates are provided in Table 7-Air Delivery-CFM (With Filter). When a furnace is installed so that the supply ducts carry air circulated by the furnace to areas outside the space containing the furnace, the return air shall also be handled by duct(s) sealed to the furnace casing and terminating outside the space containing the furnace.

Secure ductwork with proper fasteners for type of ductwork used. Seal supply- and return-duct connections to furnace with code approved tape or duct sealer.

**NOTE:** Flexible connections should be used between ductwork and furnace to prevent transmission of vibration.

Ductwork passing through unconditioned space should be insulated to enhance system performance. When air conditioning is used, a vapor barrier is recommended.

Maintain a 1-in. (25 mm) clearance from combustible materials to supply air ductwork for a distance of 36-in. (914 mm) horizontally from the furnace. See NFPA 90B or local code for further requirements.

### **Return Duct Sizing**

Refer to the Filter Selection and Duct Sizing section for information on the proper selection of filter sizes and the associated ductwork and duct transitions. Improperly designed filtering systems and return ductwork are the most common causes of airflow and/or noise complaints in HVAC systems.

#### **Ductwork Acoustical Treatment**

**NOTE:** Metal duct systems that do not have a 90 degree elbow and 10 ft. (3 M) of main duct to the first branch take-off may require internal acoustical lining. As an alternative, fibrous ductwork may be used if constructed and installed in accordance with the latest edition of SMACNA construction standard on fibrous glass ducts. Both acoustical lining and fibrous ductwork shall comply with NFPA 90B as tested by UL Standard 181 for Class 1 Rigid air ducts.

**NOTE:** For horizontal applications, the top most flange may be bent past 90\(\text{?}\) to allow the evaporator coil to hang on the flange temporarily while the remaining attachment and sealing of the coil are performed.

A89014

Table 7 – Cooling<sup>4</sup> and Heating Air Delivery - CFM (Bottom Return<sup>5</sup> With Filter)

		(SV	V1-5 and S	W4-3 set	to OFF e	xcent as	indicated	See note	s 1 and 2	1			
Unit Size: 0601714	Cla/CE	Switch s				xoopt uo			Pressure				
Clg Switches	SW2-3	SW2-2	SW2-1	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	(ESP) 0.7	0.8	0.9	1.0
Clg Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	1060	1070	1080	1080	1075	1065	1050	1035	1025	1010
CF Switches	SW3-3	SW3-2	SW3-1	1000	1070	1000	1000	1073	1000	1000	1000	1023	1010
Low-Clg Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	545	530	520	525	510			See note 4	1	
2011 Olg Doldaiti	OFF	OFF	ON	545	530	520	525	510			See note 4		
	OFF	ON	OFF	710	710	710	695	690			See note 4		
Caalina Ainflau	OFF	ON	ON	875	880	890	895	895	890	885	880	870	855
Cooling Airflow (SW2)	ON	OFF	OFF	1060	1070	1080	1080	1075	1065	1050	1035	1025	1010
Low-Cooling	ON	OFF	ON	1235	1240	1250	1255	1255	1250	1230	1190	1155	1115
Airflow (SW3)	ON	ON	OFF	1235	1240	1250	1255	1255	1250	1230	1190	1155	1115
	ON	ON	ON	1235	1240	1250	1255	1255	1250	1230	1190	1155	1115
		um Clg A	_	1425	1425	1405	1370	1335	1300	1260	1225	1190	1155
CF Switches	SW3-3	SW3-2	SW3-1	1120	1120	1100	1070	1000	1000	1200	1220	1100	1100
Cont. Fan Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	545	530	520	525	510			See note 4	1	
a Doiauit.	OFF	OFF	ON	545	530	520	525	510			See note 4		
	OFF	ON	OFF	710	710	710	695	690			See note 4		
	OFF	ON	ON	875	880	890	895	895	890	885	880	870	855
Continuous Fan	ON	OFF	OFF	1060	1070	1080	1080	1075	1065	1050	1035	1025	1010
Airflow (SW3)	ON	OFF	ON	1060	1070	1080	1080	1075	1065	1050	1035	1025	1010
	ON	ON	OFF	1060	1070	1080	1080	1075	1065	1050	1035	1025	1010
	ON	ON	ON	1060	1070	1080	1080	1075	1065	1050	1035	1025	1010
		um Heat A		1075	1075	1095	1095	1090	1080	1065	1050	1035	1020
Heating (SW1)		diate Heat		535	515	505	515	495	1000		See note 4		1020
ricuting (OTT)		ım Heat A		420	410	415	400	380			See note 4		
	141111111		V1-5 and S			-			s 1 and 2		occ note		
Unit Size: 0602120	Cla/CF	Switch s			10 0,0	xoopt do			Pressure				
Clg Switches	SW2-3	SW2-2	SW2-1	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9	1.0
Clg Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	1735	1735	1725	1715	1700	1685	1665	1650	1625	1605
CF Switches	SW3-3	SW3-2	SW3-1	1733	1733	1725	1713	1700	1005	1005	1030	1023	1005
Low-Clg Default:		0113-2											
Low-olg Delault.	. ()⊢⊢			540	525	525		540			See note 4	1	
	OFF	OFF	OFF	540 540	525 525	525 525	520	540 540			See note 4		
	OFF	OFF OFF	OFF ON	540	525	525	520 520	540		;	See note 4	1	
	OFF OFF	OFF OFF ON	OFF ON OFF	540 680	525 725	525 725	520 520 720	540 720	890	;	See note 4 See note 4	ļ ļ	855
Cooling Airflow	OFF OFF	OFF OFF ON ON	OFF ON OFF ON	540 680 925	525 725 915	525 725 910	520 520 720 895	540 720 900	890 1075	875	See note 4 See note 4 865	1 1 860	855 1020
(SW2)	OFF OFF ON	OFF OFF ON ON OFF	OFF ON OFF ON	540 680 925 1070	525 725 915 1075	525 725 910 1080	520 520 720 895 1070	540 720 900 1080	1075	875 1055	See note 4 See note 4 865 1045	860 1030	1020
	OFF OFF ON ON	OFF ON ON OFF OFF	OFF ON OFF ON OFF	540 680 925 1070 1215	525 725 915 1075 1245	525 725 910 1080 1235	520 520 720 895 1070 1220	540 720 900 1080 1220	1075 1210	875 1055 1200	See note 4 See note 4 865 1045 1195	860 1030 1185	1020 1175
(SW2) Low-Cooling	OFF OFF ON ON ON	OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON	OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395	1075 1210 1390	875 1055 1200 1380	See note 4 See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365	860 1030 1185 1355	1020 1175 1340
(SW2) Low-Cooling	OFF OFF ON ON ON	OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON	OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700	1075 1210 1390 1685	875 1055 1200 1380 1665	See note 4 See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365 1650	860 1030 1185 1355 1625	1020 1175 1340 1605
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim	OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON ON ON	OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395	1075 1210 1390	875 1055 1200 1380	See note 4 See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365	860 1030 1185 1355	1020 1175 1340
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3	OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON SW3-2	OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF SW3-1	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905	1075 1210 1390 1685	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855	See note 4 See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365 1650 1815	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745	1020 1175 1340 1605
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF	OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON ON OFF OFF ON	OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF SW3-1 OFF	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905	1075 1210 1390 1685	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855	See note 4  See note 4  865  1045  1195  1365  1650  1815  See note 4	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745	1020 1175 1340 1605
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF	OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON	OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF SW3-1 OFF ON	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955 540 540	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950 525 525	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940 525 525	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925 520 520	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905 540	1075 1210 1390 1685	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855	See note 4  See note 4  865  1045  1195  1365  1650  1815  See note 4  See note 4	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745	1020 1175 1340 1605
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF OFF	OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON ON ON ON ON ON ON ON OFF OFF	OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON irflow <sup>2</sup> SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955 540 540 680	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950 525 525 725	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940 525 525 725	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925 520 520 720	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905 540 720	1075 1210 1390 1685 1885	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855	See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365 1650 1815 See note 4 See note 4	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745	1020 1175 1340 1605 1685
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF	OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON ON ON ON ON ON OFF OFF	OFF ON OFF	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955 540 540 680 925	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950 525 525 725 915	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940 525 525 725 910	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925 520 520 720 895	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905 540 540 720 900	1075 1210 1390 1685 1885	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855	See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365 1650 1815 See note 4 See note 4 865	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745	1020 1175 1340 1605 1685
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF	OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON ON SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON ON OFF	OFF ON OFF	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955 540 540 680 925 925	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950 525 525 725 915	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940 525 525 725 910 910	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925 520 520 720 895 895	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905 540 540 720 900	1075 1210 1390 1685 1885 890	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855	See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365 1650 1815 See note 4 See note 4 865 865	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745	1020 1175 1340 1605 1685 855 855
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF ON ON	OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON ON ON OFF OFF ON ON OFF OFF	OFF ON OFF	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955 540 540 680 925 925	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950 525 525 725 915 915	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940 525 525 725 910 910	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925 520 520 720 895 895 895	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905 540 540 720 900 900	1075 1210 1390 1685 1885 890 890 890	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855 875 875 875	See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365 1650 1815 See note 4 See note 4 865 865 865	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745 4 4 860 860 860	1020 1175 1340 1605 1685 855 855 855
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON	OFF ON ON OFF ON OFF OFF	OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON irflow² SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955 540 540 680 925 925 925	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950 525 525 725 915 915 915	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940 525 525 725 910 910 910	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925 520 520 720 895 895 895 895	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905 540 540 720 900 900 900	1075 1210 1390 1685 1885 890 890 890 890	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855 875 875 875 875	See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365 1650 1815 See note 4 See note 4 865 865 865	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745 4 4 860 860 860 860	1020 1175 1340 1605 1685 855 855 855 855
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON	OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF OFF	OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON irflow² SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955 540 540 680 925 925 925 925 925	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950 525 525 725 915 915 915 915	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940 525 525 725 910 910 910 910	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925 520 520 720 895 895 895 895 895	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905  540 720 900 900 900 900	1075 1210 1390 1685 1885 890 890 890 890 890	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855 875 875 875 875 875 875	See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365 1650 1815 See note 4 See note 4 865 865 865 865	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745 14 4 860 860 860 860	1020 1175 1340 1605 1685 855 855 855 855 855
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan Airflow (SW3)	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON ON ON Maximatical	OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON ON ON OFF OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON OFF ON ON OFF ON	OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON irflow² SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955 540 540 680 925 925 925 925 925	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950 525 525 725 915 915 915 915 915	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940 525 525 725 910 910 910 910 910 1095	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925 520 720 895 895 895 895 895	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905  540 540 720 900 900 900 900 1095	1075 1210 1390 1685 1885 890 890 890 890	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855 875 875 875 875 875 875	See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365 1650 1815 See note 4 865 865 865 865 865 865 1055	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745 14 860 860 860 860 860 1045	1020 1175 1340 1605 1685 855 855 855 855
(SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan	OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON ON ON Intermed	OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF OFF	OFF ON OFF Airflow³	540 680 925 1070 1215 1380 1735 1955 540 540 680 925 925 925 925 925	525 725 915 1075 1245 1385 1735 1950 525 525 725 915 915 915 915	525 725 910 1080 1235 1395 1725 1940 525 525 725 910 910 910 910	520 520 720 895 1070 1220 1390 1715 1925 520 520 720 895 895 895 895 895	540 720 900 1080 1220 1395 1700 1905  540 720 900 900 900 900	1075 1210 1390 1685 1885 890 890 890 890 890	875 1055 1200 1380 1665 1855 875 875 875 875 875	See note 4 865 1045 1195 1365 1650 1815 See note 4 See note 4 865 865 865 865	860 1030 1185 1355 1625 1745 4 860 860 860 860 860	1020 1175 1340 1605 1685 855 855 855 855 855

Table 7 – Cooling<sup>4</sup> and Heating Air Delivery - CFM (Bottom Return<sup>5</sup> With Filter) (Continued)

				External Static Pressure (ESP)									
Unit Size: 0801714	Clg/CF	Switch s	ettings					nal Static	Pressure	(ESP)			
Clg Switches	SW2-3	SW2-2	SW2-1	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9	1.0
Clg Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	1055	1065	1080	1075	1065	1050	1045	1035	1025	1005
CF Switches	SW3-3	SW3-2	SW3-1										
Low-Clg Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	520	505	505	495	490		;	See note 4	ļ	
	OFF	OFF	ON	520	505	505	495	490		;	See note 4	ļ	
	OFF	ON	OFF	665	685	680	660	665		;	See note 4	ļ	
Cooling Airflow	OFF	ON	ON	885	895	905	900	900	895	885	875	860	845
(SW2)	ON	OFF	OFF	1055	1065	1080	1075	1065	1050	1045	1035	1025	1005
Low-Cooling	ON	OFF	ON	1245	1245	1255	1255	1260	1255	1250	1235	1220	1185
Airflow (SW3)	ON	ON	OFF	1245	1245	1255	1255	1260	1255	1250	1235	1220	1185
	ON	ON	ON	1245	1245	1255	1255	1260	1255	1250	1235	1220	1185
	Maxim	ıum Clg A	irflow <sup>2</sup>	1520	1485	1450	1415	1375	1335	1300	1265	1225	1190
CF Switches	SW3-3	SW3-2	SW3-1										
Cont. Fan Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	520	505	505	495	490		;	See note 4	ļ.	
	OFF	OFF	ON	520	505	505	495	490		;	See note 4	ļ.	
	OFF	ON	OFF	665	685	680	660	665		;	See note 4	ļ.	
Continuous Fan	OFF	ON	ON	885	895	905	900	900	895	885	875	860	845
Airflow (SW3)	ON	OFF	OFF	885	895	905	900	900	895	885	875	860	845
	ON	OFF	ON	885	895	905	900	900	895	885	875	860	845
	ON	ON	OFF	885	895	905	900	900	895	885	875	860	845
	ON	ON	ON	885	895	905	900	900	895	885	875	860	845
	Maxim	um Heat A	Airflow <sup>3</sup>	1520	1485	1450	1415	1375	1335	1300	1265	1225	1190
Heating (SW1)		diate Heat		755	745	755	755	765		;	See note 4		
	Minimu	um Heat A		620	625	630	620	610			See note 4		
		(SV	V1-5 and 9	SW4-3 set	to OFF a	veant ac	hateaihai	Saa nota	es 1 and 2.)				
					10 011,0	Acept as			Pressure (ESP)				
Unit Size: 0802120	Clg/CF	Switch s			10 011,0	Acept as							
Unit Size: 0802120 Clg Switches	Clg/CF SW2-3			0.1	0.2	0.3					0.8	0.9	1.0
		Switch s	ettings				Exteri	nal Static	Pressure	(ESP)	<b>0.8</b> 1725	<b>0.9</b> 1705	<b>1.0</b> 1685
Clg Switches	SW2-3	Switch s	ettings SW2-1	0.1	0.2	0.3	Exteri 0.4	0.5	Pressure 0.6	(ESP) 0.7			
Clg Switches Clg Default:	SW2-3 OFF	Switch s SW2-2 OFF	SW2-1 OFF	0.1	0.2	0.3	Exteri 0.4	0.5	Pressure 0.6	(ESP) 0.7 1745		1705	
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1	<b>0.1</b> 1745	<b>0.2</b> 1755	<b>0.3</b> 1755	<b>0.4</b> 1760	0.5 1755	Pressure 0.6	(ESP) 0.7 1745	1725	1705	
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	0.1 1745 700 700 830	710 710 860	<b>0.3</b> 1755 750	725 725 890	<b>0.5</b> 1755	<b>0.6</b> 1750	(ESP) 0.7 1745	1725 See note 4	1705	
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	0.1 1745 700 700 830 1045	710 710 860 1045	750 750 870 1060	725 725 890 1070	750 750 960 1070	0.6 1750	(ESP) 0.7 1745     	See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1090	1705	1685
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2)	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF	SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON OFF	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215	710 710 860 1045 1220	750 750 750 870 1060 1245	725 725 890 1070	750 750 960 1070	<b>0.6</b> 1750	(ESP) 0.7 1745   1095 1225	1725 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220	1705 4 4 1 1080 1235	1685 1070 1235
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF ON ON	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON OFF	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390	750 750 960 1070 1235 1400	0.6 1750	(ESP)  0.7  1745  1095  1225  1400	See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1090	1705 1 1 1 1080 1235 1390	1070 1235 1385
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2)	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760	750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755	1070 1235 1750	0.7 1745 1095 1225 1400 1745	1725 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725	1705 1080 1235 1390 1705	1070 1235 1385 1685
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON OFF ON ON OFF ON ON	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755	750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760	750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755	1070 1235 1750 1750	(ESP)  0.7  1745  1095  1225  1400  1745  1745	1725 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725	1705 1080 1235 1390 1705 1705	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON Maxim	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON ON ON ON ON ON	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760	750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755	1070 1235 1750	0.7 1745 1095 1225 1400 1745	1725 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725	1705 1080 1235 1390 1705	1070 1235 1385 1685
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON SWITT ON ON SWITT ON	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON SFF ON SFF SW3-1	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1745 1920	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1920	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1760 1945	750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1755 1945	1070 1235 1750 1750	1095 1225 1400 1745 1950	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940	1705 1080 1235 1390 1705 1705 1915	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1920	710 710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1755 1920	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755 1945	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1945	750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1945	1070 1235 1750 1750	1095 1225 1400 1745 1950	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940 See note 4	1705 1080 1235 1390 1705 1705 1915	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF	SWitch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF OFF	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1745 1920 700	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1755 1920 710 710	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755 1945	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1945 725	750 1755 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1755 1945	1070 1235 1750 1750	1095 1225 1400 1745 1950	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940 See note 4 See note 4	1705 1080 1235 1390 1705 1705 1915	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1745 1920 700 830	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1755 1920 710 860	750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755 1945 750 870	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1945 725 890	750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1755 1945	1070 1235 1395 1750 1960	1095 1745 1095 1225 1400 1745 1950	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4	1705 1080 1235 1390 1705 1705 1915	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685 1900
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1920 700 700 830 1045	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1755 1920 710 710 860 1045	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755 1945 750 870 1060	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1945 725 890 1070	750 750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1755 1945 750 960 1070	1070 1235 1750 1750 1750 1750 1960	1095 1745 1095 1225 1400 1745 1950	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1090	1705 1080 1235 1390 1705 1705 1915	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685 1900
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF OFF	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON ON OFF OFF ON ON ON OFF OFF	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1920 700 700 830 1045 1215	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1755 1920 710 710 860 1045 1220	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755 1945 750 750 870 1060 1245	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1760 1945 725 890 1070 1240	750 750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1755 1945 750 960 1070 1235	1070 1235 1750 1750 1070 1235 1750 1750 1960	1095 1745 1745 1095 1225 1400 1745 1745 1950	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220	1705  1 1080  1235  1390  1705  1705  1915  1 1080  1235	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685 1900
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF OFF ON ON	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON OFF OFF	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1745 1920 700 700 830 1045 1215 1370	710 710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1920 710 710 860 1045 1220 1370	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755 1945 750 870 1060 1245 1390	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1945 725 890 1070 1241 1390 1760 1945	750 750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1755 1945 750 960 1070 1235 1400	1070 1235 1750 1750 1070 1235 1395 1750 1960	1095 1225 1400 1745 1950	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390	1705  1 1080  1235  1390  1705  1705  1915  1080  1235  1390	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685 1900 1070 1235 1385
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF OFF ON	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON OFF ON ON OFF ON ON	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1745 1920 700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1370	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1755 1920 710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1370	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755 1945 750 870 1060 1245 1390	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1945 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1390	750 750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1755 1945 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1400	1070 1235 1750 1750 1070 1235 1395 1750 1960 1070 1235 1395 1395	(ESP)  0.7  1745  1095  1225  1400  1745  1950  1095  1225  1400  1400	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1390	1705  1080 1235 1390 1705 1705 1915  1080 1235 1390 1390	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685 1900 1070 1235 1385 1385
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF OFF ON	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON OFF OFF	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1745 1920 700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1370	710 710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1755 1920 710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1370	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755 1945 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1390	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1945 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1390 1390	750 750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1755 1945 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1400	1070 1235 1395 1750 1070 1235 1395 1750 1960	1095 1225 1400 1745 1950 1095 1225 1400 1400 1400	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1390 1390	1705  1080 1235 1390 1705 1705 1915  1080 1235 1390 1390 1390	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685 1900 1070 1235 1385 1385
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan Airflow (SW3)	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON MAXIM	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON OFF ON ON OFF OFF	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1920 700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1370 1370	710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1755 1920 710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1370 1370	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755 1945 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1390 1390	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1945 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1390 1390 1385	750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1945 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1400 1400 1380	1070 1235 1750 1750 1070 1235 1395 1750 1960 1070 1235 1395 1395	1095 1745 1095 1225 1400 1745 1950 1095 1225 1400 1400 1400	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1390 1390 1390 1400	1705  1080 1235 1390 1705 1915  1080 1235 1390 1390 1390 1385	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685 1900 1070 1235 1385 1385
Clg Switches Clg Default: CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:	SW2-3 OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim Intermed	Switch s SW2-2 OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON OFF OFF	SW2-1 OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1745 1745 1920 700 700 830 1045 1215 1370 1370	710 710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1755 1755 1920 710 710 860 1045 1220 1370 1370	750 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1755 1755 1945 750 750 870 1060 1245 1390 1390	725 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1760 1945 725 890 1070 1240 1390 1390 1390	750 750 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1755 1755 1945 750 960 1070 1235 1400 1400	1070 1235 1395 1750 1070 1235 1395 1750 1960	1095 1745 1095 1225 1400 1745 1950 1095 1225 1400 1400 1400	1725 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1725 1725 1940 See note 4 See note 4 1090 1220 1390 1390 1390	1705  1080 1235 1390 1705 1915  1080 1235 1390 1390 1390 1385	1070 1235 1385 1685 1685 1900 1070 1235 1385 1385

Table 7 – Cooling<sup>4</sup> and Heating Air Delivery - CFM (Bottom Return<sup>5</sup> With Filter) (Continued)

Unit Size: 1002122	Clg/CF	Switch s	ch settings External Static Pressure (ESP)										
Clg Switches	SW2-3	SW2-2	SW2-1	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	8.0	0.9	1.0
Clg Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	1820	1825	1840	1845	1840	1835	1825	1805	1780	1770
CF Switches	SW3-3	SW3-2	SW3-1										
Low-Clg Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	750	740	745	730	715		;	See note 4	ļ	
	OFF	OFF	ON	750	740	745	730	715		;	See note 4	ļ	
	OFF	ON	OFF	900	900	915	910	905		;	See note 4	ļ.	
Cooling Airflow	OFF	ON	ON	1070	1075	1095	1095	1090	1085	1095	1080	1065	1070
(SW2)	ON	OFF	OFF	1280	1285	1305	1305	1310	1305	1295	1300	1290	1285
Low-Cooling	ON	OFF	ON	1440	1445	1465	1465	1470	1485	1480	1485	1475	1460
Airflow (SW3)	ON	ON	OFF	1820	1825	1840	1845	1840	1835	1825	1805	1780	1770
	ON	ON	ON	2135	2140	2140	2135	2140	2130	2115	2100	2070	2015
	Maxim	um Clg A	irflow <sup>2</sup>	2160	2165	2175	2170	2160	2150	2135	2120	2065	2020
CF Switches	SW3-3	SW3-2	SW3-1										
Cont. Fan Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	750	740	745	730	715		;	See note 4	ļ	
	OFF	OFF	ON	750	740	745	730	715		;	See note 4	ļ	
	OFF	ON	OFF	900	900	915	910	905		;	See note 4	ļ	
0 1	OFF	ON	ON	1070	1075	1095	1095	1090	1085	1095	1080	1065	1070
Continuous Fan Airflow (SW3)	ON	OFF	OFF	1280	1285	1305	1305	1310	1305	1295	1300	1290	1285
All llow (SWS)	ON	OFF	ON	1440	1445	1465	1465	1470	1485	1480	1485	1475	1460
	ON	ON	OFF	1440	1445	1465	1465	1470	1485	1480	1485	1475	1460
	ON	ON	ON	1440	1445	1465	1465	1470	1485	1480	1485	1475	1460
	Maxim	um Heat A	\irflow <sup>3</sup>	1570	1575	1595	1595	1600	1605	1600	1600	1590	1575
Heating (SW1)	Intermed	diate Heat	Airflow <sup>3</sup>	950	955	965	975	970		,	See note 4	ļ	
	Minimu	um Heat A	irflow <sup>3</sup>	755	745	750	735	720		,	See note 4	ļ.	
		(SV	/1-5 and S	W4-3 set	to OFF, e	xcept as i	ndicated.	See note	s 1 and 2	.)			
Unit Size: 1202422	Clg/CF	Switch s	ettings				Extern	nal Static	Pressure	(ESP)			
Clg Switches	SW2-3	014/0 0	CMO 4	0.4	0.0	0.2	^ 4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.0	4.0
	01120	SW2-2	SW2-1	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.0	0.7	0.0	0.9	1.0
Clg Default:	OFF	OFF	OFF	1850	1855	1860	<b>0.4</b> 1855	1850	1830	1805	1775	1750	1730
Clg Default: CF Switches													
	OFF	OFF SW3-2 OFF	OFF							1805		1750	
CF Switches	OFF SW3-3	OFF SW3-2	OFF SW3-1	1850	1855	1860	1855	1850		1805	1775	1750	
CF Switches	OFF SW3-3 OFF	OFF SW3-2 OFF	OFF SW3-1 OFF	1850 930	1855 925	1860 915	1855 900	1850 885		1805	1775 See note 4	1750	
CF Switches	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF	OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON	930 765	925 745	915 740	900 705	1850 885 680		1805	1775 See note 4	1750	
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2)	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF	OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	930 765 930	925 745 925	915 740 915	900 705 900	1850 885 680 885		1805	1775 See note 4 See note 4	1750	
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF ON ON	OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON	930 765 930 1095	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455	915 740 915 1110	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465	885 680 885 1085	1830	1805	See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450	1750 1 1 1 1250 1435	1730
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2)	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF ON ON	OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON OFF	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF	930 765 930 1095 1265	925 745 925 1100 1255	915 740 915 1110 1265	900 705 900 1105 1280	885 680 885 1085 1275	1830	1805 \$ \$ \$ 1270	See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4	1750	1730
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON	OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855 2200	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170	1805 3 3 3 1270 1455	See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450	1750 1 1 1 1250 1435	1730 1230 1415
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON Maxim	OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON ON ON	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850	1830 1285 1470 1830	1805 \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775	1750 1 1 1 1250 1435 1750	1730 1230 1415 1730
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3	OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON OFF OFF ON OFF ON SW3-2	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON SFF SW3-1	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855 2200	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170	1805 3 3 1270 1455 1805 2145	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085	1750 1 1250 1435 1750 1990	1230 1415 1730 1890
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF	OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON ON ON	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855 2200 2200	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170	1805 3 3 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085	1750 14 1250 1435 1750 1990	1230 1415 1730 1890
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF OFF	OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON OFF OFF ON OFF ON SW3-2	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF SW3-1 OFF ON	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855 2200	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190 2190	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185 2185	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170	1805 3 3 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085	1750 1250 1435 1750 1990	1230 1415 1730 1890
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF OFF	OFF SW3-2 OFF OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON irflow² SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200 2200 930 765 930	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855 2200 2200 925 745 925	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200 2200 915 740 915	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190 2190 900 705 900	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185 2185 885 680 885	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170	1805 \$ 5 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085 2085	1750 1250 1435 1750 1990 1990	1230 1415 1730 1890
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF	OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200 2200 930 765 930 1095	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855 2200 2200 925 745 925 1100	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200 2200 915 740 915 1110	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190 2190 900 705 900 1105	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185 2185 885 680 885 1085	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170 2170	1805 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085 2085 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4	1750 1250 1435 1750 1990 1990	1230 1415 1730 1890 1890
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF OFF	OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON ON ON ON ON OFF OFF	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200 2200 930 765 930 1095 1265	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855 2200 2200 925 745 925 1100 1255	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200 2200 915 740 915 1110 1265	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190 2190 900 705 900 1105 1280	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185 2185 885 680 885 1085 1275	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170 2170	1805 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145 2145	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085 2085 See note 4	1750 1250 1435 1750 1990 1990	1230 1415 1730 1890
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF	OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200 2200 930 765 930 1095	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855 2200 2200 925 745 925 1100	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200 2200 915 740 915 1110	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190 2190 900 705 900 1105	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185 2185 885 680 885 1085	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170 2170	1805 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085 2085 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4	1750 1250 1435 1750 1990 1990	1230 1415 1730 1890 1890
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON	OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON ON ON ON ON OFF OFF	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200 2200 930 765 930 1095 1265	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855 2200 2200 925 745 925 1100 1255	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200 2200 915 740 915 1110 1265	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190 2190 900 705 900 1105 1280	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185 2185 885 680 885 1085 1275	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170 2170	1805 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145 2145	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085 2085 See note 4	1750 1250 1435 1750 1990 1990	1230 1415 1730 1890 1890
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON ON	OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200 2200 930 765 930 1095 1265 1465	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1855 2200 2200 925 745 925 1100 1255 1455	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200 2200 915 740 915 1110 1265 1470	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190 2190 900 705 900 1105 1280 1465	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185 2185 885 680 885 1085 1275 1465	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170 2170 1285 1470	1805 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145 2145 33 34 1270 1455	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085 2085 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450	1750 1250 1435 1750 1990 1990 1990 1444 1444 1445	1230 1415 1730 1890 1890 1230 1415
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON ON	OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF OFF ON ON OFF ON ON OFF ON ON	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200 2200 930 765 930 1095 1265 1465	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 2200 2200 925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1455	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200 2200 915 740 915 1110 1265 1470	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190 2190 900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1465	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185 2185 885 680 885 1085 1275 1465	1285 1470 1830 2170 2170 1285 1470 1470	1805 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145 2145 33 43 1270 1455 1455	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085 2085 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1450 1450	1750 1250 1435 1750 1990 1990 1435 1435 1435	1230 1415 1730 1890 1890 1230 1415 1415
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON	OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON OFF OFF	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON irflow² SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF Airflow³	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200 2200 930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1465	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 2200 2200  925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1455 1455 1455	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200 2200 915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1470	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190 2190 900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1465	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185 2185 885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1465	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170 2170 1285 1470 1470 1470	1805 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145 2145 1270 1455 1455 1455 1775	1775 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085 2085 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1450 1450 1450	1750 1250 1435 1750 1990 1990 1435 1435 1435 1435 1720	1230 1415 1730 1890 1890 1230 1415 1415
CF Switches Low-Clg Default:  Cooling Airflow (SW2) Low-Cooling Airflow (SW3)  CF Switches Cont. Fan Default:  Continuous Fan Airflow (SW3)	OFF SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON ON ON ON Maxim SW3-3 OFF OFF OFF ON	OFF SW3-2 OFF ON ON OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON OFF OFF	OFF SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON irflow² SW3-1 OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF ON OFF Airflow³	930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1850 2200 2200 930 765 930 1095 1265 1465 1465 1465	925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 2200 2200  925 745 925 1100 1255 1455 1455 1455 1455 1820	915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1860 2200 2200 915 740 915 1110 1265 1470 1470 1470	900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1855 2190 2190 900 705 900 1105 1280 1465 1465 1465	885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1850 2185 2185 2185 885 680 885 1085 1275 1465 1465 1465	1830 1285 1470 1830 2170 2170 1285 1470 1470 1470	1805 1270 1455 1805 2145 2145 2145 1270 1455 1455 1455 1775	1775 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1775 2085 2085 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 See note 4 1260 1450 1450 1450 1450 1745	1750  1250 1435 1750 1990 1990 1435 1435 1435 1435 1720	1230 1415 1730 1890 1890 1230 1415 1415

See Notes following table.

#### NOTES:

1.Nominal 350 CFM/ton cooling airflow is delivered with SW1-5 and SW4-3 set to OFF.

Set SW1-5 to ON for nominal 400 CFM/ton (+15% airflow).

Set SW4-3 to ON for nominal 325 CFM/ton (-7% airflow).

Set both SW1-5 and SW4-3 to ON for nominal 370 CFM/ton (+7% airflow).

This applies to Cooling and Low-Cooling airflow, but does not affect continuous fan airflow.

The above adjustments in airflow are subject to motor horsepower range/capacity.

- 2.Maximum cooling airflow is achieved when switches SW2-1, SW2-2, SW2-3 and SW1-5 are set to ON, and SW4-3 is set to OFF.
- 3.All heating CFM's are when low/medium heat rise adjustment switch (SW1-3) and comfort/efficiency adjustment switch (SW1-4) are both set to OFF.
- 4.Ductwork must be sized for high-heating CFM within the operational range of ESP. Operation within the blank areas of the chart is not recommended because high-heat operation will be above 1.0 ESP.
- 5.All airflow on 21" casing size furnaces are 5% less on side return only installations.
- 6.Return air above 1800 CFM on 24.5" casing sizes requires two sides, one side and bottom or bottom only, to allow sufficient airflow to the furnace.

### **GAS PIPING**

# **MARNING**

#### FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Never purge a gas line into a combustion chamber. Never test for gas leaks with an open flame. Use a commercially available soap solution made specifically for the detection of leaks to check all connections. A fire or explosion may result causing property damage, personal injury or loss of life.

Use proper length of pipe to avoid stress on gas control manifold and gas valve.

Gas valve inlet and/or inlet pipe must remain capped until gas supply line is permanently installed to protect the valve from moisture and debris. Also, install a sediment trap in the gas supply piping at the inlet to the gas valve.

# **A** CAUTION

### FURNACE DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in furnace damage.

Connect gas pipe to furnace using a backup wrench to avoid damaging gas controls and burner misalignment.

### **NOTICE**

#### In the State of Massachusetts:

- 1. Gas supply connections MUST be performed by a licensed plumber or gas fitter.
- 2. When flexible connectors are used, the maximum length shall not exceed 36 in. (915 mm).
- 3. When lever handle type manual equipment shutoff valves are used, they shall be T-handle valves.
- The use of copper tubing for gas piping is NOT approved by the State of Massachusetts.

Gas piping must be installed in accordance with national and local codes. Refer to current edition of NFPA 54/ANSI Z223 in the U.S.A. Refer to current edition of NSCNGPIC in Canada.

Installations must be made in accordance with all authorities having jurisdiction. If possible, the gas supply line should be a separate line running directly from meter to furnace.

**NOTE:** Use a back-up wrench on the inlet of the gas valve when connecting the gas line to the gas valve.

The gas supply pressure shall be within the maximum and minimum inlet supply pressures marked on the rating plate with the furnace burners ON and OFF.

Gas entry can be from left or right side, or top panel. See Fig. 28 and Fig. 30.

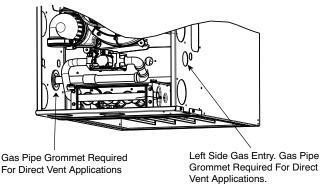


Fig. 28 - Gas Entry

A11338A

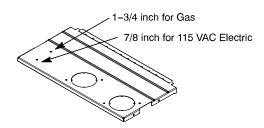


Fig. 29 – Alternate Gas and Electric Entry

A230050

**NOTE:** Top plate may be field drilled for alternate gas and 115 VAC electric entry.

Refer to Table 8 for recommended gas pipe sizing. Risers must be used to connect to furnace and to meter. Support all gas piping with appropriate straps, hangers, etc. Use a minimum of one hanger every 6 ft. (2 M). Joint compound (pipe dope) should be applied sparingly and only to male threads of joints. Pipe dope must be resistant to the action of propane gas.

Table 8 – Maximum Capacity of Pipe

Nominal:	1/2 (12.7)	3/4 (19.0)	1 (25.4)	1-1/4 (31.8)	1-1/2 (38.1)
Actual ID:	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610
Length (ft)		Capacity in	Cubic Fee	t of Gravity	
10 (3.0)	172	360	678	1390	2090
20 (6.0)	118	247	466	957	1430
30 (9.1)	95	199	374	768	1150
40 (12.1)	81	170	320	657	985
50 (15.2)	72	151	284	583	873

**NOTE:** Cubic ft. of natural gas per hr for gas pressures of 0.5 psig (14-in. w.c.) or less and a pressure drop of 0.5-in. w.c. (based on a 0.60 specific gravity gas). Ref: Chapter 6 current edition of NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.

Gas Pressure	Natural (in W.C.)	Propane (in W.C.)
Maximum	13	3.8
Minimum	4.5"	12"

When a flexible connector is used, black pipe shall be installed at the furnace gas control valve and extend a minimum of 2-in. (51 mm) outside the furnace.

For direct vent (2-pipe) applications, seal the gas pipe knockout to prevent air leakage.

Remove the required knockout. Install the grommet in the knockout. Then insert the gas pipe. The grommet is included in the loose parts bag. Piping should be pressure and leak tested in accordance with the current addition of the NFPA 54/ANSI Z223 in the United States, local, and national plumbing and gas codes before the furnace has been connected. Refer to current edition of NSCNGPIC in Canada. After all connections have been made, purge lines and check for leakage at furnace prior to

#### PRESSURE TESTING ABOVE ½ psig:

operating furnace.

The furnace and it's individual shut-off valve must be disconnected from the gas supply piping system during any pressure testing of that system at test pressures in excess of ½ psig (3.5 kPa).

### PRESSURE TESTING BELOW 1/2 psig:

The furnace must be isolated from the gas supply piping by closing its individual manual shut-off valve during any pressure testing of the gas supply piping system at test pressures equal to or less than ½ psig (3.5 kPa).

### **WARNING**

#### FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

A failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

If local codes allow the use of a flexible gas appliance connector, always use a new listed connector. Do not use a connector which has previously served another gas appliance. Black iron pipe shall be installed at the furnace gas control valve and extend a minimum of 2-in. (51 mm) outside the furnace.

An accessible manual equipment shutoff valve MUST be installed external to furnace casing and within 6 ft. (2 M) of furnace.

Install a sediment trap externally in the riser leading to furnace as shown in Fig. 30. Connect a capped nipple into lower end of tee. Capped nipple should extend below level of furnace gas controls. Place a ground joint union between furnace gas control valve and exterior manual equipment gas shutoff valve.

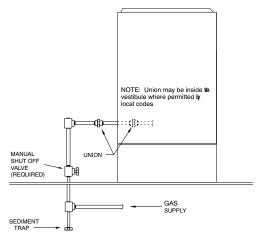


Fig. 30 – Typical Gas Pipe Arrangement

A 1/8-in. (3 mm) NPT plugged tapping, accessible for test gauge connection, MUST be installed immediately upstream of gas supply connection to furnace and downstream of manual equipment shutoff valve.

Piping should be pressure and leak tested in accordance with the current addition of the NFPA 54/ANSI Z223 in the United States, local, and national plumbing and gas codes before the furnace has been connected. Refer to current edition of NSCNGPIC in Canada. After all connections have been made, purge lines and check for leakage at furnace prior to operating furnace.

**NOTE:** The furnace gas control valve inlet pressure tap connection is suitable to use as test gauge connection providing test pressure DOES NOT exceed maximum 0.5 psig (14-In. W.C.) stated on gas control valve, see Fig. 61.

If pressure exceeds 0.5 psig (14-In. W.C.), gas supply pipe must be disconnected from furnace and capped before and during supply pipe pressure test. If test pressure is equal to or less than 0.5 psig (14-In. W.C.), turn off electric shutoff switch located on furnace gas control valve and accessible manual equipment shutoff valve before and during supply pipe pressure test. After all connections have been made, purge lines and check for leakage at furnace prior to operating furnace.

### **Gas Pipe Grommet**

For direct vent (2-pipe) applications, the knockout for the gas pipe must be sealed to prevent air leakage. Remove the knockout, install the grommet in the knockout, then insert the gas pipe. The grommet is included in the loose parts bag, see Fig. 28.

### **ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS**

# **WARNING**

### ELECTRICAL SHOCK, FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow safety warnings could result in dangerous operation, serious injury, death or property damage.

Improper servicing could result in dangerous operation, serious injury, death or property damage.

- Before servicing, disconnect all electrical power to furnace.
- When servicing controls, label all wires prior to disconnection.
   Reconnect wires correctly.
- Verify proper operation after servicing.
- Always reinstall access doors after completing service and maintenance.

# **WARNING**

### ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Blower door switch opens 115-v power to control. No component operation can occur. Do not bypass or close switch with blower door removed.

See Fig. 31 for field wiring diagram showing typical field 115-v wiring. Check all factory and field electrical connections for tightness.

Field-supplied wiring shall conform with the limitations of  $63^{\circ}F$  ( $33^{\circ}C$ ) rise.

### 115-V Wiring

Furnace must have a 115-v power supply properly connected and grounded.

**NOTE:** Proper polarity must be maintained for 115-v wiring. If polarity is incorrect, control LED status indicator light will flash code 10 and furnace will **NOT** operate.

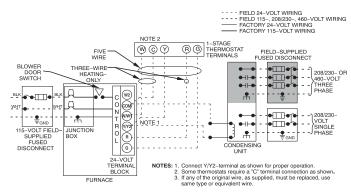
A11035A

Use a separate, fused branch electrical circuit with a properly sized fuse or circuit breaker for this furnace. See Table 9 for wire size and fuse specifications. A readily accessible means of electrical disconnect must be located within sight of the furnace.

Verify that the voltage, frequency, and phase correspond to that specified on unit rating plate. Also, check to be sure that service provided by utility is sufficient to handle load imposed by this equipment. Refer to rating plate or Table 9 for equipment electrical specifications.

**U.S.A. Installations**: Make all electrical connections in accordance with the current edition of the National Electrical Code (NEC) NFPA 70 and any local codes or ordinances that might apply.

**Canada Installations**: Make all electrical connections in accordance with the current edition of the Canadian Electrical Code CSA C22.1 and any local codes or ordinances that might apply.



A11401

Fig. 31 – Typical Field Wiring Diagram

Table 9 – Electrical Data

				MODU	LATING				
FURNACE SIZE	VOLTS- HERTZ-	OPERATING VOLTAGE RANGE <sup>*</sup>		MAX UNIT AMPS	UNIT AMPACITY <sup>†</sup>	MINIMUM WIRE SIZE	MAXIMUM WIRE LENGTH	MAXIMUM FUSE OR CKT BKR	
SIZE	PHASE	Maximum <sup>*</sup>	Minimum*	AWIFS	AWIFACITI	AWG	FT (M) <sup>‡</sup>	AMPS**	
0601714	115-60-1	127	104	9.0	12.0	14	30 (9.4)	15	
0602120	115-60-1	127	104	14.1	18.4	12	31 (9.5)	20	
0801714	115-60-1	127	104	9.0	12.0	14	30 (9.4)	15	
0802120	115-60-1	127	104	14.1	18.4	12	31 (9.5)	20	
1002122	115-60-1	127	104	14.1	18.4	12	31 (9.5)	20	
1202422	115-60-1	127	104	14.1	18.4	12	31 (9.5)	20	

- \*. Permissible limits of the voltage range at which the unit operates satisfactorily.
- †. Unit ampacity = 125 percent of largest operating component's full load amps plus 100 percent of all other potential operating components' (EAC, humidifier, etc.) full load amps.
- ‡. Length shown is as measured one way along wire path between furnace and service panel for maximum 2 percent voltage drop
- \*\*. Time-delay type is recommended

### **MARNING**

#### ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, or property damage.

The cabinet MUST have an uninterrupted or unbroken ground according to NEC NFPA 70 or local codes to minimize personal injury if an electrical fault should occur. In Canada, refer to Canadian Electrical Code CSA C22.1. This may consist of electrical wire, conduit approved for electrical ground or a listed, grounded power cord (where permitted by local code) when installed in accordance with existing electrical codes. Refer to the power cord manufacturer's ratings for proper wire gauge. Do not use gas piping as an electrical ground.

# **A** CAUTION

### FURNACE MAY NOT OPERATE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in intermittent furnace operation.

Furnace control must be grounded for proper operation or else control will lock out. Control must remain grounded through green/yellow wire routed to gas valve and manifold bracket screw.

# **WARNING**

#### FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, or property damage.

Do not connect aluminum wire between disconnect switch and furnace. Use only copper wire, see Fig. 32.

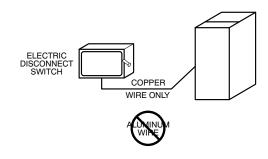


Fig. 32 – Field-Supplied External Electrical Box on Furnace Casing J-Box Installation

# **WARNING**

### FIRE OR ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, or property damage.

High voltage field connections must be located in J-Box with furnace, or in field supplied external disconnect mounted to furnace.

If field-supplied manual disconnect switch is to be mounted on furnace casing side, select a location where a drill or fastener cannot damage electrical or gas components.

The J-Box must be used when field line voltage electrical connections are made to the furnace wiring harness inside the furnace casing. The J-Box cover is not required if a field-supplied external electrical box is attached to the outside of the furnace casing. The field ground wire and furnace main ground wire are grounded when the J-Box bracket is attached to the furnace and the field ground wire and factory ground wire are secured to the bracket grounding screw. If the J-Box cover is not used, the field and factory spliced connections must be located inside the external electrical box. Do not leave splice connections unprotected inside the furnace.

The J-Box cover, mounting bracket and screws are shipped in the loose parts bag included with the furnace. See Fig. 33 for J-Box mounting locations.

The J-Box mounting bracket and green ground screw is used as a grounding point for all line voltage wiring options. The J-Box cover may be omitted when electrical connections are made inside an external electrical box mounted external to the casing.

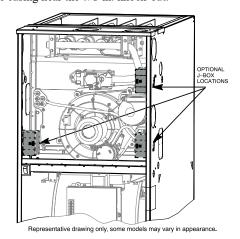
### **External Electrical Box on Furnace Casing**

**NOTE:** Check to ensure that external electrical box does not interfere with duct work, gas piping or the indoor coil drain. See Fig. 29 for alternate electric entry through top panel.

 Select and remove 7/8-in. (22 mm) knock-out on the desired side of the casing. Remove the knock-out from the casing.

**NOTE:** If electrical entry through the furnace top panel is used, a 7/8-in. (22 mm) hole must be drilled through the top panel.

2. Drill two (2) 1/8-in. (3 mm) pilot holes through the dimples in the furnace casing near the 7/8-in. knock-out.



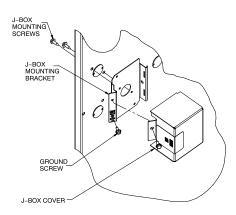


Fig. 33 – Installing J-Box (When Used) Appearance May Vary

7. Install the green ground screw to the J-Box bracket and attach both

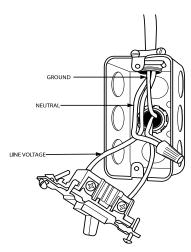


Fig. 34 – External Electrical Box

A190278

**NOTE:** If electrical entry through the furnace top panel is used, mark the screw hole locations using the mounting holes in the external electrical box as a template.

# For a side-mounted external electrical box, complete the following:

- Align the J-Box bracket with the knock-out inside the furnace casing.
- Install the threaded end of a strain-relief bushing through the J-Box bracket and the furnace casing. Strain-relief bushing should be installed so that the bushing can be tightened around the wiring harness inside the furnace casing.
- 3. Align the external electrical box with the 7/8-in. (22 mm) knock-out.
- 4. Install and tighten the lock-nut on the strain-relief bushing inside the external electrical box.
- 5. Fasten the external electrical box to the furnace casing using two (2) sheet metal screws.
- 6. Route field power wiring into external electrical box.
- 7. Pull furnace line voltage power wires through strain-relief bushing of the external electrical box.
- 8. Pull the ground wire of the field line voltage wiring through the strain-relief bushing into the furnace casing.
- Install the green ground screw to the J-Box bracket and attach both ground wires to the green ground screw.
- 10. Connect any code required external disconnect(s) to field power wiring.
- 11. Connect field power and neutral leads to furnace power leads inside the external electrical box as shown in Fig. 34.

# For a top panel-mounted external electrical box, complete the following:

- 1. Drill two (2) 1/8-in. (3 mm) pilot holes through the dimples in the furnace casing near the 7/8-in. knock-out on the side of the casing. Do not remove the knock-out in the side of the casing.
- 2. Align the J-Box bracket with the pilot holes inside the furnace casing.
- 3. Install 2 screws through the outside of the casing to secure the J-Box bracket to the furnace casing.
- 4. Route field power wiring into external electrical box.
- 5. Pull furnace line voltage power wires through strain-relief bushing of the external electrical box.
- Pull the ground wire of the field line voltage wiring through the strain-relief bushing into the furnace casing. ground wires to the green ground screw.

A12226

- Connect any code required external disconnect(s) to field power wiring.
- 9. Connect field power and neutral leads to furnace power leads inside the external electrical box as shown in Fig. 34.

### Power Cord Installation in Furnace J-Box

**NOTE:** Power cords must be able to handle the electrical requirements listed in Table 9. Refer to power cord manufacturer's listings.

- Install J-Box mounting bracket to inside of furnace casing, see Fig. 33.
- Route listed power cord through 7/8-in. (22 mm) diameter hole in casing and J-Box bracket.
- 3. Secure power cord to J-Box bracket with a strain relief bushing or a connector approved for the type of cord used.
- 4. Pull furnace power wires through 1/2-in. (12 mm) diameter hole in J-Box. If necessary, loosen power wires from strain—relief wire-tie on furnace wiring harness.
- 5. Connect field ground wire and factory ground wire to green ground screw on J-Box mounting bracket as shown in Fig. 33.
- Connect power cord power and neutral leads to furnace power leads as shown in Fig. 31.
- Attach furnace J-Box cover to mounting bracket with screws supplied in loose parts bag. Do not pinch wires between cover and bracket, see Fig. 33.

#### **BX Cable Installation in Furnace J-Box**

- Install J-Box mounting bracket to inside of furnace casing, see Fig. 33.
- Route BX connector through 7/8-in. (22 mm) diameter hole in casing and J-Box bracket.
- Secure BX cable to J-Box bracket with connectors approved for the type of cable used.
- 4. Connect field ground wire and factory ground wire to green ground screw on J-Box mounting bracket as shown in Fig. 33.
- Connect field power and neutral leads to furnace power leads. as shown in Fig. 31.
- Attach furnace J-Box cover to mounting bracket with screws supplied in loose parts bag. Do not pinch wires between cover and bracket.

### WARNING

# FIRE, EXPLOSION, ELECTRICAL SHOCK, AND CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in dangerous operation, personal injury, death, or property damage.

Do not drill into blower shelf of furnace to route control wiring. Route any control or accessory wiring to the blower compartment through external knockouts on the casing.

Communication Connector is used when the furnace is controlled by an optimum communicating User Interface, see Fig. 35.

The communication plug is supplied with the User Interface. Refer to the instructions supplied with the User Interface.



Fig. 35 – Communication Connector

A03193

**NOTE:** A = DX+, B = DX-, C = C, D = R

### **Outside Air Thermistor (OAT)**

Used in conjunction with communicating User Interface. Not required when a standard type thermostat is used. Refer to the instructions supplied with the User Interface for details.

### 24-V Wiring

Make field 24-v connections at the 24-v terminal strip, see Fig. 36. Connect terminal Y/Y2 as shown in Fig. 31 for proper cooling operation. Use only AWG No. 18, color-coded, copper thermostat wire.

**NOTE:** Use AWG No. 18 color-coded copper thermostat wire for lengths up to 100 ft. (31 M). For wire lengths over 100 ft., use AWG No. 16 wire.

The 24-v circuit contains an automotive-type, 3-amp. fuse located on the control. Any direct shorts during installation, service, or maintenance could cause this fuse to blow. If fuse replacement is required, use ONLY a 3-amp. fuse of identical size, see Fig. 36.

### **Thermostats**

For best results, use a communicating wall control to control this modulating furnace. A single stage or two-stage heating and cooling thermostat can be used with the furnace. The furnace control board CPU will control the furnace and outdoor unit staging. A two stage heating and cooling thermostat can also be used to control the staging. However, full modulating capability will not be available when the furnace staging is controlled by the thermostat. Furnace staging will be limited to Minimum and Maximum inputs or Intermediate and Maximum inputs depending on the configuration of set-up switches SW1-2 and SW4-2. For two stage thermostat control of a 2-stage outdoor unit, remove the ACRDJ jumper from the furnace control board. Refer to typical thermostat wiring diagrams and the Sequence of Operation section for additional details. Consult the thermostat installation instructions for specific information about configuring the thermostat, see Fig. 36.

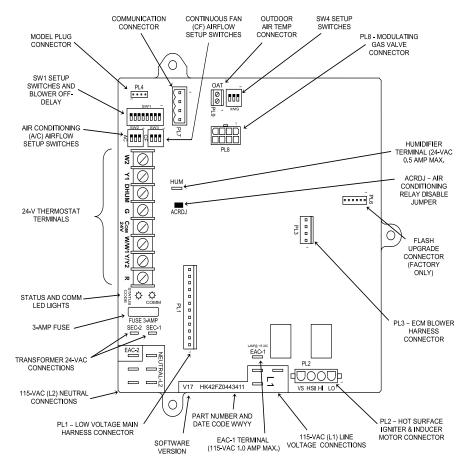


Fig. 36 - Example of Modulating Furnace Control

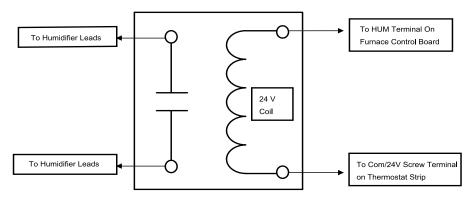


Fig. 37 – Field-supplied Isolation Relay for Humidifiers with Internal Power Supply

### Accessories (See Fig. 36 and Fig. 37.)

1. Electronic Air Cleaner (EAC)

Connect an accessory Electronic Air Cleaner (if used) using 1/4-in. female quick connect terminals to the two male 1/4-in. quick-connect terminals on the control board marked EAC-1 and EAC-2. The terminals are rated for 115VAC, 1.0 amps maximum and are energized during blower motor operation.

Humidifier (HUM)

The HUM terminal is a 24 VAC output, energized when the blower is operating during a call for heat.

Connect an accessory 24 VAC, 0.5 amp. maximum humidifier (if used) to the 1/4-in. male quick-connect HUM terminal and COM-24V screw terminal on the control board thermostat strip.

**NOTE:** If the humidifier has its own 24 VAC power supply, an isolation relay may be required. Connect the 24 VAC coil of the isolation relay to the HUM and COM/24V screw terminal on the control board thermostat strip, see Fig. 37.

- 3. Communication Connector (communication connection) This connection is used when the furnace is controlled by an optional communicating User Interface instead of a standard thermostat. The communication plug is supplied with the User
  - for complete details, see Fig. 36.
- 4. Outside Air Thermistor (OAT) The OAT connection is used in conjunction with communicating User Interface. It is not required when the furnace is controlled by a standard type thermostat. Refer to the instructions supplied with the

### Alternate Power Supplies

This furnace is designed to operate on utility generated power which has a smooth sinusoidal waveform. If the furnace is to be operated on a

Interface. Refer to the instructions supplied with the User Interface

A11616

A11157

User Interface for complete details.

generator or other alternate power supply, the alternate power supply must produce a smooth sinusoidal waveform for compatibility with the furnace electronics. The alternate power supply must generate the same voltage, phase, and frequency (Hz) as shown in Table 9 or the furnace rating plate.

Power from an alternate power supply that is non-sinusoidal may damage the furnace electronics or cause erratic operation.

Contact the alternate power supply manufacturer for specifications and details.

### **VENTING**

**NOTE:** Planning for the venting system should be done in conjunction with planning for the ductwork, drainage, and furnace accessories, such as air cleaners and humidifiers. Begin assembling the venting system **AFTER** the furnace is set in place in the required orientation.

Venting for this furnace shall follow all Local codes for Category IV venting systems. This furnace is CSA approved for venting with PVC/ABS DWV venting systems. This furnace is also CSA approved for venting with M&G DuraVent®PolyPro® or Centrotherm Innoflue® polypropylene venting systems - straight pipe and fittings (elbows, reducers, increasers, connectors, adapters) only.

**NOTE:** THESE INSTRUCTIONS **DO NOT** CONTAIN DETAILED INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS FOR POLYPROPYLENE VENTING SYSTEMS. Refer to the polypropylene venting system manufacturer's installation instructions for the polypropylene venting system installation.

**NOTE:** When using polypropylene venting systems, all venting materials used, including the vent terminations, must be from the same manufacturer.

# Special Venting Requirements for Installations in Canada

Installation in Canada must conform to the requirements of CSA B149 code. Vent systems must be composed of pipe, fittings, cements, and primers listed to ULC S636. The special vent fittings, accessory concentric vent termination kits, (NAHA001CV or NAHA002CV) and accessory external drain trap available from the furnace manufacturer have been certified to ULC S636 for use with those Royal Pipe and IPEX PVC vent components which have been certified to this standard. In Canada, the primer and cement must be of the same manufacturer as the vent system - GVS-65 Primer (Purple) for Royal Pipe or IPEX System 636, PVC/CPVC Primer, Purple Violet for Flue Gas Venting and GVS-65 PVC Solvent Cement for Royal Pipe or IPEX System 636(1)t, PVC Cement for Flue Gas Venting, rated Class IIA, 65 deg C. must be used with this venting system - do not mix primers and cements from one manufacturer with a vent system from a different manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's instructions in the use of primer and cement and never use primer or cement beyond its expiration date.

The safe operation, as defined by ULC S636, of the vent system is based on following these installation instructions, the vent system manufacturer's installation instructions, and proper use of primer and cement. All fire stop and roof flashing used with this system must be UL listed material. Acceptability under Canadian standard CAN/CSA B149 is dependent upon full compliance with all installation instructions. Under this standard, it is recommended that the vent system be checked once a year by qualified service personnel.

The authority having jurisdiction (gas inspection authority, municipal building department, fire department, etc.) should be consulted before installation to determine the need to obtain a permit.

\*IPEX System 636TM is a trademark of IPEX Inc.

Consignes spéciales pour l'installation de ventilation au Canada

L'installation faite au Canada doit se conformer aux exigences du code CSA B149. Ce systême de ventillation **doit** se composer de tuyaux, raccords, ciments et apprêts conformes au ULC S636. La tuyauterie de

ventilation des gaz, ses accessoires, le terminal concentrique mural, (NAHA001CV or NAHA002CV) ainsi que l'ensemble du drain de condensation extérieur fourni par le fabricant de cette fournaise ont été certifiés ULCS 636 pour l'application des composantes Royal Pipe, IPEX PVC qui sont certifiées à ce standard. Au Canada, l'apprêt et le ciment doivent être du même fabricant que le système d'évacuation. L'apprêt GVS-65 (Purple) et le ciment-solvant GVS-65 doivent être utilisé avec les Royal Pipe. Système IPEX 636, apprêt PVC/CPVC, Purple pour évacuation des gaz de combustion et système IPEX 636(1)t, ciment PVC pour évacuation des gaz de combustion, coté classe IIA, 65 deg C. doivent être utilisés avec le système d'évacuation IPEX 636 – Ne pas combiner l'apprêt et le ciment d'un manufacturier avec un système d'évacuation d'un manufacturier différent.

Bien suivre les indications du manufacturier lors de l'utilisation de l'apprêt et du ciment et ne pas utiliser ceux-ci si la date d'expiration est atteinte

L'opération sécuritaire, tel que définit par ULC S636, du système de ventilation est basé sur les instructions d'installation suivantes, ainsi que l'usage approprié de l'apprêt et ciment. Tout arrêt feu et solin de toit utilisés avec ce système doivent être des matériaux listés UL. L'acceptation du standard Canadien CAN/CSA B149 est directement relié à l'installation conforme aux instructions ci- haut mentionnées. Le standard Canadien recommande l'inspection par un personel qualifié et ce, une fois par année.

Les autoritées ayant juridiction (inspecteurs de gas, inspecteurs en bâtiments, département des incendies, etc) devraient être consultées avant l'installation afin de déterminer si un permis est requis.

# **MARNING**

#### CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow the steps outlined below for each appliance connected to the venting system being placed into operation could result in carbon monoxide poisoning or death.

The following steps shall be followed for each appliance connected to the venting system being placed into operation, while all other appliances connected to the venting system are not in operation:

- 1. Seal any unused openings in venting system.
- Inspect the venting system for proper size and horizontal pitch, as required in the National Fuel Gas Code, ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54 or the CSA B149.1 Natural Gas and Propane Installation Code and these instructions. Determine that there is no blockage or restriction, leakage, corrosion and other deficiencies, which could cause an unsafe condition.
- As far as practical, close all building doors and windows and all doors between the space in which the appliance(s) connected to the venting system are located and other spaces of the building.
- 4. Close fireplace dampers.
- 5. Turn on clothes dryers and any appliance not connected to the venting system. Turn on any exhaust fans, such as range hoods and bathroom exhausts, so they are operating at maximum speed. Do not operate a summer exhaust fan.
- 6. Follow the lighting instructions. Place the appliance being inspected into operation. Adjust the thermostat so appliance is operating continuously.
- 7. Test for spillage from draft hood equipped appliances at the draft hood relief opening after 5 minutes of main burner operation. Use the flame of a match or candle.
- 8. If improper venting is observed during any of the above tests, the venting system must be corrected in accordance with the National Fuel Gas Code, ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54 and/or CSA B149.1 Natural Gas and Propane Installation Code.
- 9. After it has been determined that each appliance connected to the venting system properly vents when tested as outlined above, return doors, windows, exhaust fans, fireplace dampers and any other gas-fired burning appliance to their previous conditions of use.

#### General

If this furnace replaces a furnace that was connected to a vent system or chimney, the vent or vent connectors of other remaining appliances may need to be re-sized. Vent systems or vent connectors of other appliances must be sized to the minimum size as determined using appropriate table found in the current edition of National Fuel Gas Code NFPA 54/ANSI Z-223.1. In Canada, refer to CAN/CSA-B149.1.

An abandoned masonry chimney may be used as a raceway for properly insulated and supported combustion-air (when applicable) and vent pipes. Each furnace must have its own set of combustion-air and vent pipes and be terminated individually, as shown in Fig. 38 for Direct Vent (2-Pipe) system or Fig. 39 for ventilated combustion air option.

A furnace shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a separate appliance designed to burn solid fuel.

Other gas appliances with their own venting system may also use the abandoned chimney as a raceway providing it is permitted by local code, the current edition of the National Fuel Gas Code and the vent or liner manufacturer's installation instructions. Care must be taken to prevent the exhaust gases from one appliance from contaminating the combustion air of other gas appliances.

Do not take combustion air from inside the chimney when using ventilated combustion air or single pipe vent option.

These furnaces can be vented as either direct vent (two-pipe) or as ventilated combustion air system. Each type of venting system is described below. Common venting between these furnaces or other appliances is prohibited.

### **Materials**

#### U.S.A.

Combustion air and vent pipe, fittings, primers, and solvents must conform to American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standards and American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) standards. See Table 11 for approved materials for use in the U.S.A. This furnace is also CSA approved for venting with M&G DuraVent®PolyPro® or Centrotherm Innoflue® polypropylene venting systems - straight pipe and fittings (elbows, reducers, increasers, connectors, adapters) only.

#### Canada

Special Venting Requirements for Installations in Canada Installation in Canada must conform to the requirements of CAN/CSA B149 code. Vent systems **must** be composed of pipe, fittings, cements, and primers listed to ULC S636. M&G DuraVent®PolyPro® or Centrotherm Innoflue® polypropylene venting systems are ULC S636 listed.

**NOTE:** When using polypropylene venting systems, all venting materials used, including the vent terminations must be from the same manufacturer.

### **Venting Systems**

# **WARNING**

#### CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow the instructions outlined below for each appliance being placed into operation could result in carbon monoxide poisoning or death.

For all venting configurations for this appliance and other gas appliances placed into operation for this structure, provisions for adequate combustion, ventilation, and dilution air must be provided in accordance with:

**U.S.A. Installations**: Current edition of Section 9.3 NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1, Air for Combustion and Ventilation and applicable provisions of the local building codes.

**Canadian Installations**: Current edition of Part 8 of CAN/CSA-B149.1. Venting Systems and Air Supply for Appliances and all authorities having jurisdiction.

# **NOTICE**

# RECOMMENDED SUPPORT FOR VENT TERMINATION

It is recommended that sidewall vent terminations of over 24 inches (0.6 M) in length or rooftop vent terminations of over 36 inches (1 M) in length be supported by EITHER the factory accessory vent termination kit or field-supplied brackets or supports attached to the structure. A factory accessory vent termination kit may be used for direct vent terminations. Termination kits are available for 2-in. or 3-in. pipe. See Table 10 for available options.

#### **Roof Termination (Preferred)**

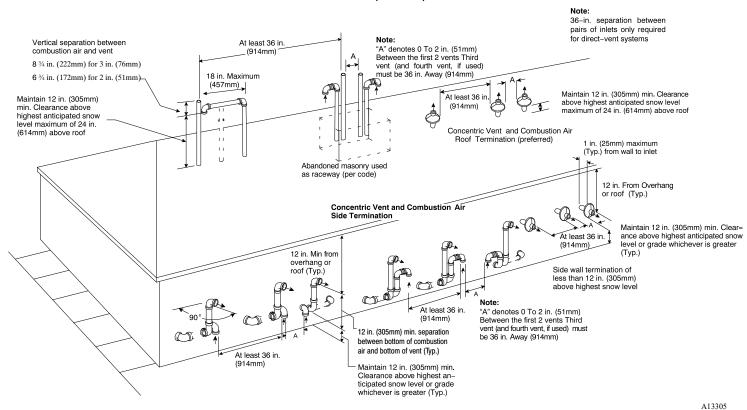


Fig. 38 - Combustion Air and Vent Pipe Termination for Direct Vent (2-Pipe) System

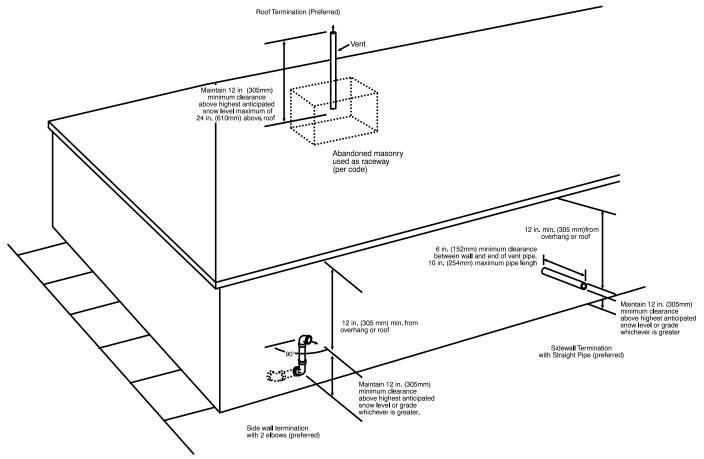


Fig. 39 - Vent Pipe Termination for Non-Direct Vent and Ventilated Combustion Air System

A05091

Table 10 - Vent Termination Kit for Direct Vent (2-pipe) Systems

Vent and		Approved Tv	vo-Pipe Termina	ation Fittings		Allowable Concentric	Concentric Vent
Combustion Air Pipe	1 1/2-in.	2-in.	2 1/2-in.	3-in.	4-in.	Vent Kit	Kit
Diameters	(38 mm)	(51 mm)	(64 mm)	(76-mm)	(102 mm)		
1 1/2-in. (38 mm)	No	Yes	No	No	No	2-in. (51 mm)	NAHA002CV
2-in. (51 mm)	No	Yes	No	No	No	2-in. (51 mm)	NAHA002CV
2 1/2-in. (64 mm)	No	No	No	Yes	No	2-in. (51 mm)	NAHA002CV
2 1/2-111. (04 111111)	INO	INO	INO	162	INO	3-in. (76 mm)	NAHA001CV
3-in. (76-mm)	No	No	No	Yes	No	3-in. (76 mm)	NAHA001CV
4-in. (102 mm)	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	3-in. (76 mm)	NAHA001CV

### **Direct Vent / 2-Pipe System**

In a direct-vent (2-pipe) system, all air for combustion is taken directly from outdoor atmosphere, and all flue products are discharged to outdoor atmosphere. Combustion-air and vent pipes must terminate together in the same atmospheric pressure zone, either through the roof (preferred) or a sidewall. See Fig. 42 for references to clearances required by National code authorities.

### **NOTICE**

# OPTIONAL CONFIGURATION FOR COMBUSTION AIR INLET PIPE

In applications where there is a risk of excessive moisture entering the combustion air inlet pipe, a moisture trap may be added to the inlet pipe to help prevent moisture from entering the furnace from the combustion air inlet pipe, see Fig. 48.

When sizing venting systems, the equivalent length of the optional inlet pipe moisture trap must be taken into account.

### **Ventilated Combustion Air Systems**

In a ventilated combustion air option, the vent terminates and discharges the flue products directly to the outdoors similar to a direct vent system. See Fig. 43 for references to clearances required by National code authorities.

All air for combustion is piped directly to the furnace from a space that is well ventilated with outdoor air (such as an attic or crawl space) and the space is well isolated from the living space or garage. Combustion air requirements for this option are the same as the requirements for providing outside air for combustion for a single pipe vent system. Refer to the "Air For Combustion and Ventilation" Section.

### **A** NOTICE

#### OPTIONAL VENTING BELOW THE FURNACE

The venting system may be positioned below the furnace **ONLY** IF the factory accessory External Vent Trap Kit is used. The External Vent Trap Kit is only approved for PVC/ABS DWV venting systems.

CAREFULLY FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS PROVIDED WITH THE EXTERNAL VENT TRAP KIT FOR LAYING OUT THE VENTING SYSTEM AND THE DRAIN SYSTEM. The instructions included with this furnace DO NOT APPLY to vent systems that are located below the furnace.

# **MARNING**

### CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow the instructions outlined below for each appliance being placed into operation could result in carbon monoxide poisoning or death.

The instructions included with this furnace **DO NOT APPLY** to vent systems that are located below the furnace. **CAREFULLY FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS PROVIDED WITH THE EXTERNAL VENT TRAP KIT FOR LAYING OUT THE VENTING SYSTEM AND THE DRAIN SYSTEM** when all or part of the venting system is placed below the furnace.

Proper configuration of the venting and drain system is critical when placing all or part of the venting system below the level of the furnace. **VENT GASSES COULD BE RELEASED FROM THE DRAINAGE SYSTEM** if the instructions provided with the External Vent Trap Kit are not followed.

**NOTE:** The vent for this appliance must not terminate over public walkways; or near soffit vents or crawl space vents or other areas where condensate or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard or cause property damage; or where condensate vapor could cause damage or could be detrimental to the operation of regulators, relief valves, or other equipment.

### Locating the Vent Termination

#### General

**NOTE:** Termination Requirements for the Provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan are located at the end of this section.

Combustion-air inlet pipe (direct vent/2-pipe system only) and vent pipe must terminate outside structure, either through sidewall or roof.

Special termination requirements may be required in other Canadian provinces. Refer to the authority having jurisdiction for clarification and/or additional clearance requirements.

For vent termination clearance, references to National codes are shown in Fig. 42 for Direct Vent/2-Pipe system and Fig. 43 for Ventilated Combustion Air system. For exterior termination arrangements, refer to Fig. 38 for Direct Vent/2-Pipe system and Fig. 39 for Ventilated Combustion Air system. Contact Local code authorities for other requirements to and/or exemptions from the National codes shown in the figures.

Roof termination is the recommended termination location. Roof terminations provide better performance against sustained prevailing winds. The roof location is preferred since the vent and combustion air system is less susceptible to damage or contamination. The termination is usually located away from adjacent structures or other obstacles such as inside corners, windows, doors or other appliances. It is less prone to icing conditions, and it often has less visible vent vapors.

Sidewall terminations may require sealing or shielding of building surfaces with a corrosive resistance material due to the corrosive properties of combustion products from the vent system, as well as protection of adjacent structures.

# **A** NOTICE

#### RECOMMENDED SUPPORT FOR VENT TERMINATIONS

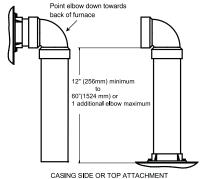
It is recommended that sidewall vent terminations in excess of 24 inches (0.6 M) or rooftop terminations in excess of 36 inches (1 M) in vertical length be supported by **EITHER** the Direct Vent Termination Kit shown in Table 10 or by field-supplied brackets or supports fastened to the structure.

When determining appropriate location for termination, consider the following guidelines:

- Comply with all clearance requirements stated in Fig. 42 or Fig. 43 per application.
- Termination or termination kit should be positioned where vent vapors will not damage plants/shrubs, air conditioning equipment or utility meters.
- 3. Do not locate termination directly into prevailing winds. Termination should be positioned so that it will not be affected by sustained prevailing winds over 30 mph, wind eddy, such as inside building corners, or by recirculation of flue gases, airborne leaves, or light snow.
- Termination or termination kit should be positioned where it will not be damaged by or subjected to foreign objects such as stones, balls, etc.
- 5. Termination or termination kit should be positioned where vent vapors are not objectionable.

### **Direct Vent / 2-Pipe System**

Direct vent (2-pipe) vent and combustion air pipes must terminate outside the structure. See Fig. 39 for references to vent clearances required by National Code Authorities. Allowable vent and combustion air terminations are shown in Fig. 38.



CASING SIDE OR TOP ATTACHMENT

COMBUSTION AIR PIPE

(NON-DIRECT VENT FOR ALL MODELS EXCEPT MODULATING UNLESS
INSTALLED IN ATTIC OR CRAWL SPACE)

Fig. 40 – Combustion Air Pipe Attachment

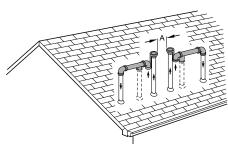


Fig. 41 – Pipe Vent and Combustion

### **WARNING**

### CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow the instructions outlined below for each appliance being placed into operation could result in carbon monoxide poisoning or death.

For all venting configurations for this appliance and other gas appliances placed into operation for this structure, provisions for adequate combustion, ventilation, and dilution air must be provided in accordance with:

**U.S.A. Installations**: Current edition of Section 9.3 NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1, Air for Combustion and Ventilation and applicable provisions of the local building codes.

**Canadian Installations**: Current edition of Part 8 of CAN/CSA-B149.1. Venting Systems and Air Supply for Appliances and all authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **Ventilated Combustion Air**

The vent pipe for a Ventilated Combustion Air System must terminate outdoors. See Fig. 42 For references to vent clearances required by National code authorities. Allowable vent terminations are shown in Fig. 39. The combustion air pipe terminates in a well-ventilated attic or crawl space. Follow the clearances as shown in Fig. 41.

The combustion air pipe cannot terminate in attics or crawl spaces that use ventilation fans designed to operate in the heating season. If ventilation fans are present in these areas, the combustion air pipe must terminate outdoors as a Direct Vent System.

Termination Requirements for the Provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan

The Provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan require a minimum unobstructed distance of 4 ft. (1.2 M) from the foundation to the property line of the adjacent lot for vent termination of any appliance with an input over 35,000 BTUh. If there is less than 4 ft. (1.2 M) of unobstructed distance to the property line of the adjacent lot, no type of vent termination is permitted for appliances with inputs greater than 35,000 BTUh.

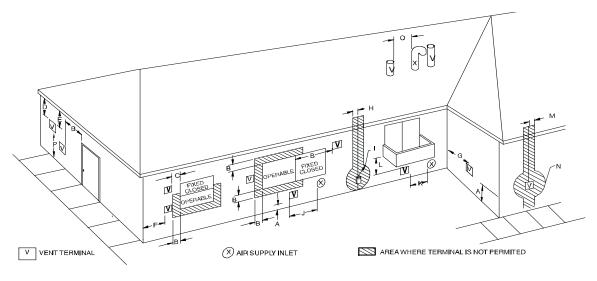
There are no additional restrictions on unobstructed distances greater than 8 ft. (2.4 M). All single, two-pipe and concentric vents may be used, providing all other Code and manufacturer's requirements in these instructions are adhered to. Refer to the appropriate **Vent Termination** section above for locating the vent termination

The concentric vent kit currently cannot be modified to attach an elbow to the vent portion of the rain cap. A tee attached to the rain cap could potentially direct the flue gas plume toward the intake air stream and contaminate the incoming combustion air for the furnace.

Refer to Fig. 47 for terminations approved for use in Alberta and Saskatchewan.

If the unobstructed distance from the foundation to the property line of the adjacent lot is no less than 4 ft. (1.2 M) and no greater than 8 ft. (2.4 M), it will be necessary to re-direct the flue gas plume. In this situation, a concentric vent kit cannot be used. A 2-pipe termination (or single pipe termination when permitted with ventilated combustion air applications) that re-directs the flue gas away by use of an elbow or tee, certified to ULC S636 from the adjacent property line must be used, see Fig. 47.

A13406



A12326

Fig. 42 – Direct Vent Termination Clearance

**NOTE:** The following is based upon National codes for gas appliances and is provided as a reference. Refer to local codes which may supersede these standards and/or recommendations.

Item	Clearance Description	Canadian Installations <sup>(1)</sup> (per CAN/CSA B149.1)	U.S. Installations <sup>(2)</sup> (per ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54)
Α	Clearance above grade, veranda, porch, deck, balcony or anticipated snow level	12 in. (305 mm) 18 in. (457 mm) above roof surface.	12 in. (305 mm)
В	Clearance to a window or door that may be opened	12 in. (305 mm) for appliances >10,000 BTUh (3 kW) and =100,000 BTUh (30 kW),<br 36 in. (914 mm) for appliances >100,000 BTUh (30 kW)	9 in. (229 mm) for appliances >10,000 BTUh (3 kW) and = 50,000 BTUh (15 kW), 12 in. (305 mm) for appliances 50,000 BTUh (15kW)
С	Clearance to a permanently closed window		<u> </u>
D	Vertical clearance to a ventilated soffit located above the terminal within a horizontal distance of 2 feet (61 cm) from the centerline of the terminal Clearance to an unventilated soffit	For clearances not specified in ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54 or CA with local installation codes and the requirements of the instructions	gas supplier and the manufacturer's installation
E F	_	Manufacturer's Recommenda	tion: Soc Notes 2 9
G	Clearance to an outside corner Clearance to an inside corner	Manufacturer's Recommenda	tion. See Notes 3-6.
G	Clearance to an inside corner  Clearance to each side of the centerline extended		Т
Н	above electrical meter or gas service regulator assembly	3 ft. (.9 M) within 15 ft. (4.6 M) above the meter/regulator assembly.	3 ft. (.9 M) within 15 ft. (4.6 M) above the meter/regulator assembly.
	Clearance to service regulator vent outlet	3ft. (.9 M)	See Note 4.
J	Clearance to non—mechanical air supply inlet to building or the combustion air inlet to any other appliance	12 in. (305 mm) for appliances >10,000 Btuh(3 kW) and = 100,000 BTUh (30 kW),<br 36 in. (914 mm) for appliances >100,000 BTUh (30 kW)	9 in. (9 mm) for appliances >10,000 BTUh (3 kW) and = 50,000 BTUh (15 kW),<br 12 in.(305 mm) for appliances >50,000 BTUh (15kW)
K	Clearance to a mechanical air supply inlet	6 ft. (1.8 M)	3ft. (.9 M) above if within 10 ft. (3 M) horizontally
L	Clearance under a veranda, porch, deck, or balcony	12 in. (305 mm).  Permitted only if veranda, porch, deck, or balcony is fully open on a minimum of two sides beneath the floor.	See Note 4.  Manufacturer's Recommendation: See Notes 3-8.
М	Clearance to each side of the centerline extended above or below vent terminal of the furnace to a dryer or water heater vent, or other appliance's vent intake or exhaust	12 in. (305 mm)	12 in. (305 mm)
N	Furnace combustion air intake clearance to a water heater vent, dryer vent or other types of appliance exhaust.	3 ft. (.9 M)	3 ft. (.9 M)
0	Clearance from a plumbing vent stack	3 ft. (.9 M)	3 ft. (.9 M)
Р	Clearance above or adjacent to paved sidewalk or paved driveway located on public property	7 ft. (2.1 M)  Vent shall not terminate above or adjacent to a sidewalk or paved driveway that is located between two single family dwellings and serves both dwellings.	See Note 4.  Manufacturer's Recommendation: See Notes 3-8.

### > greater than, $\geq$ greater than or equal to, < less than, $\leq$ less than or equal to

### Notes:

- 1. In accordance with the current CAN/CSA B149.1, Natural Gas and Propane Installation Code.
- 2. In accordance with the current ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54, National Fuel Gas Code
- 3. NOTE: This table is based upon National codes for gas appliances, and are provided as a reference.

Refer to Local codes which may supersede these standards and/or recommendations.

- 4. For clearances not specified in ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54 or CAN/CSA B 149.1, clearances shall be in accordance with local installation codes and the requirements of the gas supplier and the manufacturer's installation instructions.
- When locating vent terminations, consideration must be given to prevailing winds, location, and other conditions which may cause recirculation of the combustion products of adjacent vents. Recirculation can cause poor combustion, inlet condensate problems, vent termination icing, and/or accelerated corrosion of the heat exchangers.
- 6. Design and position vent outlets to avoid ice build-up on and moisture damage to surrounding surfaces.
- 7. The vent for this appliance shall not terminate:
  - a. Near soffit vents of crawl space vents or other areas where condensate or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard or property damage; or
  - b. Where condensate vapor could cause damage or could be detrimental to the operation of regulators, relief valves, or other equipment.
- 8. Avoid venting under a deck or large overhang. Recirculation could occur and cause performance or system problems. Ice build-up may occur.

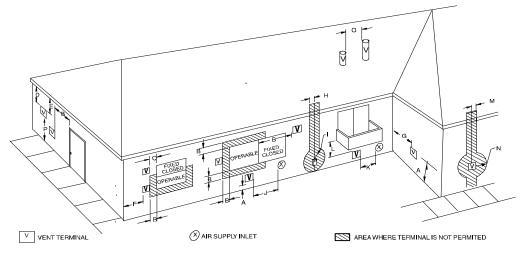


Fig. 43 - Ventilated Combustion Air and Non-Direct Vent Termination Clearance

A12325

NOTE: The following is based upon National codes for gas appliances and is provided as a reference. Refer to local codes which may supersede these standards and/or recommendations.

Item	Clearance Description	Canadian Installations <sup>(1)</sup>	U.S. Installations <sup>(2)</sup>
iteiii	Clearance Description	(per CAN/CSA B149.1)	(per ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54)
Α	Clearance above grade, veranda, porch, deck,	12 in. (305 mm)	12 in. (305 mm)
	balcony or anticipated snow level	18 in. (457 mm) above roof surface.	,
В	Clearance to a window or door that may be	12 in. (305 mm) for appliances >10,000 BTUh (3 kW) and =100,000 BTUh (30 kW),</td <td>4ft. (1.2M) below or to the side of the opening, 1 ft (.3M) above the opening.</td>	4ft. (1.2M) below or to the side of the opening, 1 ft (.3M) above the opening.
	opened	36 in. (914 mm) for appliances >100,000 BTUh (30 kW)	Manufacturer's Recommendation: See Note 8.
С	Clearance to a permanently closed window		
	Vertical clearance to a ventilated soffit located	For clearances not specified in ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54 or CA	N/CSA B149.1, clearances shall be in accordance
D	above the terminal within a horizontal distance of 2	with local installation codes and the requirements of the g	gas supplier and the manufacturer's installation
	feet (61 cm) from the centerline of the terminal	instructions	i.
E	Clearance to an unventilated soffit		
F	Clearance to an outside corner	Manufacturer's Recommendate	tion: See Notes 3-8.
G	Clearance to an inside corner		
	Clearance to each side of the centerline extended	3 ft. (.9 M) within 15 ft. (4.6 M)	3 ft. (.9 M) within 15 ft. (4.6 M)
Н	above electrical meter or gas service regulator	above the meter/regulator assembly.	above the meter/regulator assembly.
	assembly	· .	ů ,
ı	Clearance to service regulator vent outlet	3ft. (.9 M)	See Note 4.
	Clearance to non-mechanical air supply inlet to	12 in. (305 mm) for appliances >10,000 Btuh(3 kW)	4ft. (1.2M) below or to the side of the opening,
J	building or the combustion air inlet to any other	and = 100,000 BTUh (30 kW),</td <td>1 ft (.3M) above the opening.</td>	1 ft (.3M) above the opening.
	appliance	36 in. (914 mm) for appliances >100,000 BTUh (30 kW)	Manufacturer's Recommendation: See Note 8
K	Clearance to a mechanical air supply inlet	6 ft. (1.8 M)	3ft. (.9 M) above if within 10 ft. (3 M) horizontally
	Clearance under a veranda, porch, deck, or	12 in. (305 mm).	See Note 4.
L	balcony	Permitted only if veranda, porch, deck, or balcony is fully	M 6 4 4 B 4 4 6 6
	•	open on a minimum of two sides beneath the floor.	Manufacturer's Recommendation: See Notes 3-8.
	Clearance to each side of the centerline extended		
M	above or below vent terminal of the furnace to a	12 in. (305 mm)	12 in. (305 mm)
	dryer or water heater vent, or other appliance's direct vent intake or exhaust		·
	Clearance to a moisture exhaust duct		
N	(dryer vent, spa exhaust, etc.)	12 in. (305 mm) See Note 4	12 in. (305 mm) See Note 4
0	Clearance from a plumbing vent stack	3 ft. (.9 M)	3 ft. (.9 M)
	C.C. and on a planning von duok	7 ft. (2.1 M).	0 14 (.0 m)
	Clearance above or adjacent to paved sidewalk or	Vent shall not terminate above or adjacent to a sidewalk or	<b>-</b> 5. (2.110)
Р	paved driveway located on public property	paved driveway that is located between two single-family	7ft. (2.1M)
	,,	dwellings and serves both dwellings.	
		<u> </u>	

### > greater than, ≥ greater than or equal to, < less than, ≤ less than or equal to

Notes:

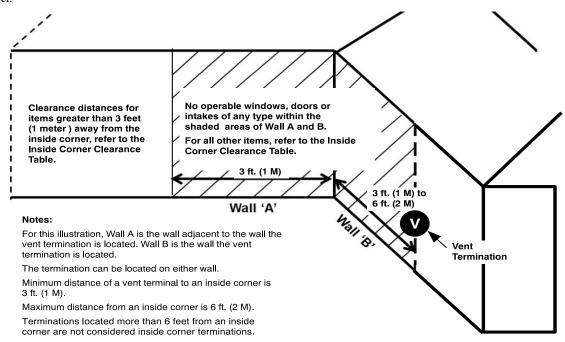
- In accordance with the current CAN/CSA B149.1, Natural Gas and Propane Installation Code.
- In accordance with the current ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54, National Fuel Gas Code 2.
- NOTE: This table is based upon National codes for gas appliances, and are provided as a reference.

Refer to Local codes which may supersede these standards and/or recommendations.

- For clearances not specified in ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54 or CAN/CSA B 149.1, clearances shall be in accordance with local installation codes and the requirements of the gas supplier and the manufacturer's installation instructions.
- When locating vent terminations, consideration must be given to prevailing winds, location, and other conditions which may cause recirculation of the combustion products of adjacent vents. Recirculation can cause poor combustion, inlet condensation problems, vent termination icing, and/or accelerated corrosion of the heat exchangers.
- Design and position vent outlets to avoid ice build-up on and moisture damage to surrounding surfaces.
- The vent for this appliance shall not terminate:
  - a. Near soffit vents of crawl space vents or other areas where condensate or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard or property damage; or
  - b. Where condensate vapor could cause damage or could be detrimental to the operation of regulators, relief valves, or other equipment.
- These National standards apply to all non-direct-vent gas appliances. Contact Local code officials for additional requirements and/or exclusions.

Inside corner vent terminations are permitted provided that (Fig. 44):

- Only two exterior walls come together to form an angle of 90 degrees to 135 degrees. There are no other exterior walls attached to either wall to form an alcove.
- The vent termination must be located at least 3 feet from an inside corner and follow the clearance distances in the Inside Corner Termination drawing.
- The clearance distances apply when the vent is at least 3 feet (1 meter) from, but not more than 6 feet (2 meters) away from an inside corner.
- 4. For vent terminations located more than 6 feet (2 meters) from an inside corner, refer to the appropriate Direct Vent Clearance Table for all two pipe terminations or Non-Direct Vent Clearance Table for all single pipe terminations.
- 5. The clearance distances to items between the vent termination and the outside corner, refer to the appropriate Direct Vent Clearance Table for all two pipe terminations or Non-Direct Vent Clearance Table for all single pipe terminations.



A190032

Fig. 44 – Inside Corner Termination

### **Inside Corner Terminations**

Inside corner vent terminations are permitted provided that:

- Only two exterior walls come together to form an angle of 90 degrees to 135 degrees. There are no other exterior walls attached to either wall to form an alcove.
- The clearance distances apply when the vent is at least 3 feet (1 meter) from, but not more than 6 feet (2 meters) away from an inside corner.
- For vent terminations located more than 6 feet (2 meters) from an inside corner, refer to the appropriate Direct Vent Clearance Table for all two pipe terminations or Non-Direct Vent Clearance Table for all single pipe terminations.
- The clearance distances to items between the vent termination and the outside corner, refer to the appropriate Direct Vent Clearance Table for all two pipe terminations or Non-Direct Vent Clearance Table for all single pipe terminations.

For clearance distances when vent termination is located more than 6 ft. (2 M) away from an inside corner, refer to the appropriate Direct Vent or Non-Direct Vent Cle	arance Table.
Clearance description when termination is at least 3 ft. (1 M) away and not more than 6 ft. (2 M) away from an inside corner.	
Clearance above grade, veranda, porch, deck, balcony or anticipated snow level	12-in. (305 mm)
Clearance to a permanently closed window on either Wall A or Wall B	12-in. (305 mm)
Vertical clearance to a soffit located above the vent termination within a horizontal distance of 2 ft. (61 cm) from the centerline of the vent termination	6 ft. (2 M)
Clearance to a ventilation exhaust (including HRV/ERV) on either Wall A or Wall B	12-in. (305 mm)
Clearance above paved sidewalk or paved driveway located on public property	7 ft. (2.1 M)
Clearance under a veranda, porch, deck, or balcony	N.P.*
No operable windows, doors or intakes of any type are permitted on Wall B between the vent termination and the inside corner when the vent termination is at least 3 more than 6 ft. (2 M) away from an inside corner.	ft. (1 M) away and not
The following items on Wall A must be located at least 3 ft. (1 M) away from the inside corner when a vent termination is located on Wall B and the vent termination is or not more than 6 ft. (2 M) away from an inside corner.	at least 3 ft. (1 M) away
A window or door that may be opened	
The centerline extended above electrical meter or gas service regulator assembly	
A service regulator vent outlet	
The centerline of a dryer or water heater vent, or other appliance's vent intake	
A non-mechanical air supply inlet	
Clearance distances shown for Wall A are measured horizontally from the exit of the termination on Wall B to the closest edge of the item shown below.	
Clearance to a mechanical air supply (including HRV/ERV) inlet unless termination is 3 ft. (1 M) above the horizontal line of the intake	10 ft. (3 M)
For clearance distances from a vent termination to the outside corner of the wall, refer to the appropriate Direct Vent or Non-Direct Vent Clearance Table	
*N.P. = Not Permitted	
NA = Not Applicable	

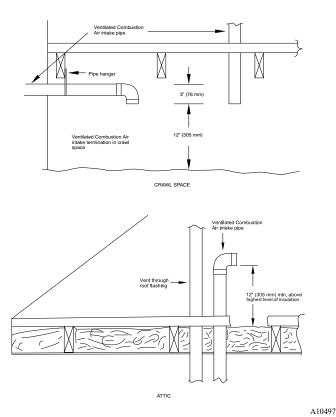


Fig. 45 – Vent Terminations for Ventilated Combustion Air Size the Vent and Combustion Air Pipes

Furnace combustion air and vent pipe connections are sized for 2-in. (50 mm ND) PVC/ABS DWV pipe. The combustion air and vent pipe connections also accommodate 60 mm polypropylene venting systems with outside diameters of approximately 60 mm (2-3/8 inches). Any pipe diameter change should be made outside furnace casing in vertical pipe. Any change in diameter to the pipe must be made as close to the furnace as reasonably possible, see Fig. 45.

The Maximum Vent Length for the vent and combustion air pipe (when used) is determined from the Maximum Equivalent Vent Length in Table 11 minus the number of fittings multiplied by the deduction for each type of fitting used from Table 8.

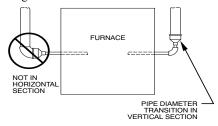


Fig. 46 – Combustion Air and Vent Pipe Diameter Transition A93034 Location and Elbow Configuration

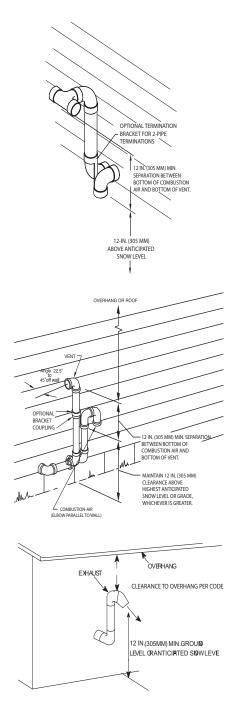


Fig. 47 – Alberta and Saskatchewan Vent Termination

A13078A

# ! NOTICE

# OPTIONAL CONFIGURATION FOR COMBUSTION AIR INLET PIPE

In applications where there is a risk of excessive moisture entering the combustion air inlet pipe, a moisture trap may be added to the inlet pipe to help prevent moisture from entering the furnace from the combustion air inlet pipe, see Fig. 47.

When sizing venting systems, the equivalent length of the optional moisture trap (15 feet/5 M) must be taken into account.

### **Recommended Combustion Air Inlet Moisture Trap**

To prevent moisture from trickling into the furnace vestibule, a trap can be installed in the intake air pipe near the furnace. To prevent moisture, connecting a drain line to the trap is recommended as trace amounts of moisture will evaporate into the intake air stream. If the combustion air inlet is located near a moisture exhaust duct, or there are other concerns of excessive moisture being drawn into the combustion air inlet, it is encouraged to connect a drain line to the trap.

The trap can be constructed from a running tee of the same diameter of the intake air pipe with **EITHER** a removable cap attached to a 6-inch long pipe connected to the tee or the External Vent Trap Kit to help prevent contaminants from entering the furnace, see Fig. 47.

The External Vent Trap Kit accessory may be used as a trap for the combustion air inlet pipe if a large amount of moisture must be removed. The drain line may be connected to the same drain as the furnace condensate and the evaporator coil condensate line **ONLY** if the inlet air trap drain and the evaporator coil drain empty into an open segment of pipe above the drain, see Fig. 11. When using the External Vent Trap Kit, refer to those instructions for proper drain connections.

The tee may also be connected to the intake air pipe on the side of the casing, see Fig. 47.

In any configuration, it will be necessary to add the equivalent length of the tee (15 feet/5 M) to the Total Equivalent Vent Length of the venting system.

## **NOTICE**

# ADDITIONAL INFORMATION FOR POLYPROPYLENE VENTING SYSTEMS

Polypropylene venting systems include flexible vent pipe. These flexible vent pipes have a different equivalent vent length than straight sections of PVC/ABS DWV vent pipe. Be sure to make the appropriate deductions from the Maximum Equivalent Vent Length (MEVL), or additions to the Total Equivalent Vent Length (TEVL), when applying flexible vent pipes in polypropylene venting systems. See the polypropylene vent system manufacturer's installation instructions for details.

When using metric-sized venting systems, use these equivalencies for obtaining the proper MEVL from the Tables:

Use 2" Vent Tables for 60 mm (o.d.) vent systems

Use 3" Vent Tables for 80 mm (o.d.) vent systems

Use 4" Vent Tables for 100 mm (o.d.) vent systems

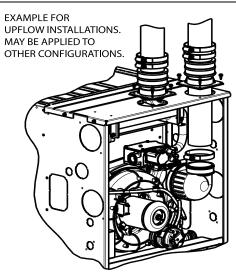


Fig. 48 – Sample Inlet Air Pipe Connection for Polypropylene Venting Systems

The measured length of pipe used in a single or 2-pipe termination is included in the total vent length. Include deductions from the Maximum Equivalent Vent Length (MEVL) contained in the Venting Tables for elbows and flexible vent pipe. Factory accessory concentric vent terminations or pipe lengths and elbows used for "standard" vent terminations do not require a deduction from the Maximum Equivalent Vent Length, see vent termination figures associated with Table 11. Include a deduction for a Tee when used for Alberta and Saskatchewan terminations.

**NOTE:** Polypropylene venting systems MAY require additional deductions from the MEVL, or additions to the TEVL, for vent terminations and flexible pipe sections. See the polypropylene venting system manufacturer's instructions for details on equivalent lengths of vent terminations and flexible vent pipes, and for calculating total vent lengths.

To calculate the Total Equivalent Vent Length (TEVL) of the venting system:

- 1. Measure the individual distance from the furnace to the termination for each pipe.
- 2. Count the number of elbows for each pipe.
- 3. For each pipe, multiply the number of elbows by the equivalent length for the type of elbow used. Record the equivalent length of all the elbows for each pipe.
- 4. If a Tee is used on the termination (Alberta and Saskatchewan, when required) record the equivalent length of the Tee used.
- Calculate Total Equivalent Vent Length by adding the equivalent lengths of the fittings to the lengths of the individual vent and combustion air pipes.
- 6. When using polypropylene venting systems with flexible vent pipes, perform adjustments for the equivalent length of the flexible vent pipe to the calculated total equivalent venting system length. See the polypropylene vent system manufacturer's instructions for details.
- 7. Select a diameter of vent pipe from Table 11 and note the Maximum Equivalent Vent Length (MEVL) shown for that application for that specific furnace input size. Compare the Total Equivalent Vent Length (TEVL) to the MEVL:
- 8. If the Total Equivalent Vent Length is *shorter* than the Maximum Equivalent Vent Length for the diameter of pipe chosen, then that diameter of pipe selected may be used.
- If the Total Vent Length is *longer* than the Maximum Equivalent Vent Length for the diameter of pipe chosen, that diameter pipe MAY NOT be used for venting the furnace. Try the next larger diameter pipe.

**NOTE:** If the calculated Total Equivalent Vent Lengths results in different diameter pipes for the vent and combustion air, select the larger diameter for both pipes.

NOTE: If the Maximum Vent Length for diameter of the pipe selected is longer than the measured length and the equivalent length of all the fittings and terminations (TEVL), recalculate Total Equivalent Vent Length using the next smaller diameter. If the Maximum Equivalent Vent Length is still longer than the longer TEVL of the vent pipe or combustion air pipe, then that diameter of pipe selected may be used.

When installing vent systems pipe lengths of 10 ft. (3 M) or less, use the smallest allowable pipe diameter. Using a pipe size greater than required for short venting systems may result in loss of efficiency, incomplete combustion, flame disturbance, or flame sense lockout.

For vent systems longer than 10 ft. (3 M), any larger diameter vent pipe shown in Table 11 FOR THAT SIZE FURNACE may be used.

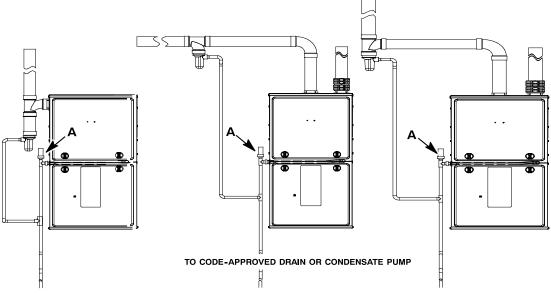
# **Combustion Air and Vent Piping Insulation Guidelines**

NOTE: Use closed cell, neoprene insulation or equivalent.

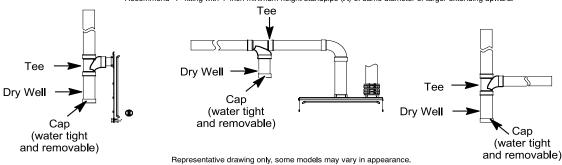
The vent pipe may pass through unconditioned areas. The amount of exposed pipe allowed is shown in Table 9.

- 1. Using winter design temperature (used in load calculations), find appropriate temperature for your application and furnace model.
- 2. Determine the amount of total and exposed vent pipe.
- 3. Determine required insulation thickness for exposed pipe length(s).
- 4. When combustion air inlet piping is installed above a suspended ceiling, the pipe MUST be insulated with moisture resistant insulation such as Armaflex or other equivalent type of insulation.
- Insulate combustion air inlet piping when run in warm, humid spaces.
- Install the insulation per the insulation manufacturer's installation instructions.

**NOTE:** Pipe length (ft. / M) specified for maximum pipe lengths located in unconditioned spaces cannot exceed total allowable pipe length as calculated from Table 11.



Recommend "T" fitting with 4-inch minimum height standpipe (A) of same diameter or larger extending upward.



A170122A

Fig. 49 – Recommended Combustion Air Inlet Moisture Trap

**NOTE:** Maximum Equivalent Vent Length (MEVL) includes standard and concentric vent termination and does NOT include elbows. Use Table 11 - Deductions from Maximum Equivalent Vent Length to determine allowable vent length for each application.

Table 11 - Maximum Equivalent Vent Length - Ft.

								Ft.									
Un	it Size		60,	000				80,000				100	,000			120,000	)
	Pipe Dia. (in)	1 ½	2	2 ½	3	1 ½	2	2 ½	3	4	2	2 ½	3	4	2 ½	3	4
	0-2000	50	100	175	200	30	95	130	175	200	45	80	175	200	10	75	185
	2001-3000	45	95	165	185	30		125	165	185	40	75	165	185	10	70	175
	3001-4000	40	90	155	175	25		115	155	175	38	73	155	175	5	65	165
Altitude	4001-4500	35	85	150	170	23	70	110	150	165	36		133	170			160
(feet)	4501-5000	33	80	130	165	22	70	110	145	160	30	70	150	165		60	100
(leet)	5001-6000	37	75	140	155	22		100	135	150	33	70	140	155			155
	6001-7000	35	70	130	145	20		90	125	140	31		135	145	N/A	50	140
	7001-8000	32	66	120	135	18	66	90	120	125	29	66	125	135		46	130
	8001-9000	30	62	115	125	17	62	80	110	115	27	62	115	125		43	120
	9001-10000	27	57	105	115	15	57	75	100	105	24	57	100	115		39	115

					Maxin	num Ec	quivaler	nt Vent	Length	- Mete	rs						
							M	eters									
Uni	t Size		60,	000				80,000				100	,000			120,000	)
	Pipe Dia. (mm)	38	51	64	76	38	51	64	76	102	51	64	76	102	64	76	102
	0-610	15.2	30.4	53.3	60.9	9.1	28.9	39.6	53.3	60.9	13.7	24.3	53.3	60.9	3.0	22.8	56.3
	611-914	13.7	28.9	50.2	56.3	9.1		38.1	50.2	56.3	12.1	22.8	50.2	56.3	3.0	21.3	53.3
	915-1219	12.1	27.4	47.2	53.3	7.6		35.0	47.2	53.3	11.5	22.0	47.2	53.3	1.5	19.8	50.2
Altitude	1220-1370	10.6	25.9	45.7	51.8	7.0	21.3	33.5	45.7	50.2	10.9		41.2	51.8			48.7
(meters)	1371-1524	10.0	24.3	45.7	50.2	6.7	21.3	33.5	44.1	48.7	10.9	21.3	45.7	50.2		18.2	40.7
	1525-1829	11.2	22.8	42.6	47.2	0.7		30.4	41.1	45.7	10.0	21.3	42.6	47.2			47.2
	1830-2134	10.6	21.3	39.6	44.1	6.0		27.4	38.1	42.6	9.4		41.1	44.1	NA	15.2	42.6
	2135-2438	9.7	20.1	36.5	41.1	5.4	20.1	27.4	36.5	38.1	8.8	20.1	38.1	41.1		14.0	39.6
	2439-2743	9.1	18.8	35.0	38.1	5.1	18.8	24.3	33.5	35.0	8.2	18.8	35.0	38.1		13.1	36.5
	2744-3048	8.2	17.3	32.0	35.0	4.5	17.3	22.8	30.4	32.0	7.3	17.3	30.4	35.0		11.8	35.0

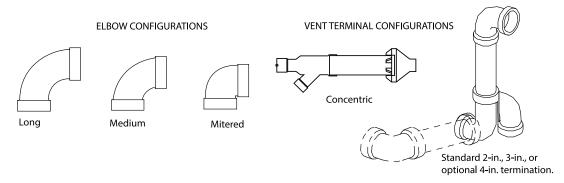


Table 12 - Deductions from Maximum Equivalent Vent Length - Ft. (M)

Pipe Diameter (in): 1-1/2 2-1/2 Mitered 90° Elbow 8 (2.4)(24)8 (2.4)8 (2.4)8 (2.4)Medium Radius 90° Elbow 5 (1.5)5 (1.5)5 (1.5)5 (1.5)5 (1.5)Long Radius 90° Elbow 3 (0.9)3 (0.9)3 (0.9)3 (0.9)3 (0.9)(1.2)(1.2)Mitered 45° Elbow 4 (1.2)4 (1.2)(1.2)2.5 Medium Radius 45° Elbow 2.5 (8.0)2.5 (8.0)2.5 (8.0)(8.0)2.5 (8.0)1.5 1.5 1.5 Long Radius 45° Elbow 1.5 (0.5)(0.5)(0.5)1.5 (0.5)(0.5)16 (4.9)16 (4.9)16 (4.9)16 (4.9)16 (4.9)Tee **Concentric Vent Termination** 0 (0.0)U (0.0)(0.0)**Standard Vent Termination** (0.0)0 (0.0)(0.0)(0.0)

#### NOTES

- 1. Use only the smallest diameter pipe possible for venting. Over-sizing may cause flame disturbance or excessive vent terminal icing or freeze-up.
- 2. NA Not allowed. Pressure switch will not close, or flame disturbance may result.
- 3. Vent sizing for Canadian installations over 4500 ft. (1370 M) above sea level are subject to acceptance by the local authorities having jurisdiction.
- 4. Size both the combustion air and vent pipe independently, then use the larger size for both pipes.
- 5. Assume the two 45° elbows equal one 90° elbow. Wide radius elbows are desirable and may be required in some cases.
- 6. Elbow and pipe sections within the furnace casing and at the vent termination should not be included in vent length or elbow count.
- 7. The minimum pipe length is 5 ft. (2 M) linear feet (meters) for all applications.
- 8. Use 3-in. (76 mm) diameter vent termination kit for installations requiring 4-in. (102 mm) diameter pipe.
- 9. A running Tee in the Combustion Air Pipe adds 0 ft. to the TEVL of the vent length.

## Configure the Furnace

# **A** CAUTION

### CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. To route the vent pipe and combustion air pipe through the furnace, the manufacturer supplied kit must be used. Failure to properly seal the blower compartment from the furnace vestibule could result in the circulation of carbon monoxide throughout the structure. The vent pipe and combustion air pipe must be a continuous pipe while passing through the blower compartment. Seals supplied in this kit must be installed per the instructions provided. Follow all procedures outlined in these instructions.

### **Near Furnace Vent Connections**

Offsets in the vertical portion of the vent pipe should be made with 45 deg. elbows instead of 90 deg. elbows. Short horizontal runs of vent pipe are difficult to pitch correctly and may trap water in the vent pipe, see Fig. 50.

A13110

Trapped water in the vent pipe may result in nuisance pressure switch tripping.

### **Install the Vent and Combustion Air Pipes**

With the furnace installed in the required position, remove the desired knockouts from the casing. It will be necessary to remove one knockout for the vent pipe and the other knockout for the combustion air connection, see Fig. 14.

Use a flat blade screwdriver and tap on the knockout on opposite sides, where the knockout meets the casing. Fold the knockout down with duct pliers and work the knockout back and forth until it is removed. Trim any excess metal from the knockout with tin snips.

The vent elbow can be rotated to the required location on the casing if necessary, see Fig. 49. To rotate the vent elbow:

- Loosen the clamp on the inlet of the vent elbow attached to the inducer.
- Rotate the vent elbow to the required position. There are rounded notches in the vent elbow to align it with the inducer housing for each orientation.
- 3. Tighten the clamp around the vent elbow. Torque the clamp to 15 lb-in, see Fig. 50-Fig. 55.

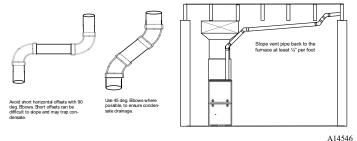
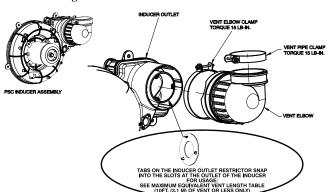
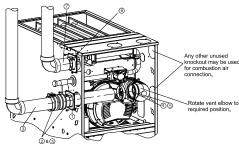


Fig. 50 - Near Furnace Vent Connections

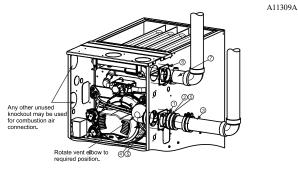


A170006

Fig. 51 – Inducer Vent Elbow (Appearance May Vary)

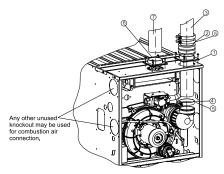


UPFLOW LEFT CONFIGURATION



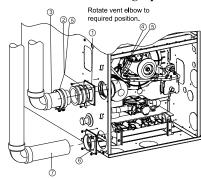
UPFLOW RIGHT CONFIGURATION

A11308A



### UPFLOW VERTICAL VENT

Fig. 52 – Upflow Configurations (Appearance may vary) See "Notes for Venting Options"



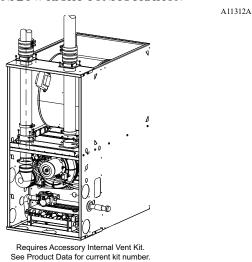
### DOWNFLOW LEFT CONFIGURATION

A11311A

Rotate vent elbow to required position.

Any other unused knockout may be used for combustion air connection.

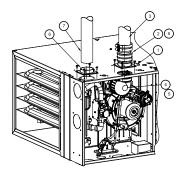
### DOWNFLOW RIGHT CONFIGURATION



DOWNFLOW VERTICAL

Fig. 53 – Downflow Configurations (Appearance may vary)

See "Notes for Venting Options"

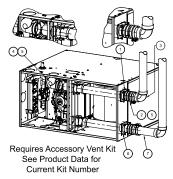


### HORIZONTAL LEFT-VERTICAL VENT CONFIGURATION

Alternate combustion air connection.

Rotate vent elbow to required position.

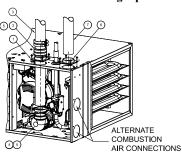
### HORIZONAL LEFT-LEFT VENT CONFIGURATION



### HORIZONTAL LEFT-RIGHT VENT CONFIGURATION

Fig. 54 – Horizontal Left (Appearance may vary)

See "Notes for Venting Options"

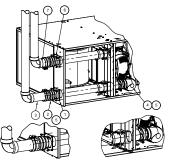


### HORIZONTAL RIGHT-VERTICAL VENT CONFIGURATION

A11337

A11327A

A11328A

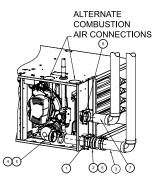


Requires Internal Vent Kit See Product Data for Current Kit Number

### HORIZONTAL RIGHT-LEFT VENT CONFIGURATION

A11336

A11335



### HORIZONTAL RIGHT-RIGHT VENT CONFIGURATION

### Fig. 55 – Horizontal Right (Appearance may vary) See "Notes for Venting Options"

NOTES FOR VENTING OPTIONS

- 1. Attach vent pipe adapter with gasket to furnace casing.
- 2. Align notches in rubber coupling over standoffs on adapter. Slide clamps over the coupling.
- 3. Slide vent pipe through adapter and coupling into vent elbow.
- 4. Insert vent pipe into vent elbow.
- 5. Torque all clamps 15 lb.-in.
- 6. Attach combustion air pipe adapter with gasket to furnace.
- 7. Attach combustion air pipe to adapter with silicone. Pilot drill a 1/8-in. hole in adapter and secure with a #7 x 1/2-in. sheet metal screw.

### Table 13 - Maximum Allowable Exposed Vent Lengths Insulation Table

Maximum Allowable Exposed Vent Length in Unconditioned Space - Ft.

					40,0	00* B	TUH								6	0,000	BTU	Н				
	Unit Size	Uni	nsula	ated		3/8-in sulati			1/2-in sulati		ı	Jnins	ulated	i	3/8	-in. In	nsulat	ion	1/2	-in. In	sulati	ion
Winter Design Temp	Pipe Dia. in.	1 ½	2	2 1/2	1 ½	2	2 ½	1 ½	2	2 ½	1 ½	2	2 1/2	3	1 ½	2	2 ½	3	1 ½	2	2 ½	3
°F .	20	20	20	20	20	50	45	20	60	50	20	30	30	25	20	75	65	60	20	85	75	65
	0	10	5	5	20	25	20	20	30	25	15	15	10	10	20	40	30	25	20	45	40	30
	-20	5			20	15	10	20	20	15	10	5			20	25	20	15	20	30	25	20
	-40				15	10	5	15	15	10	5				20	15	15	10	20	20	15	10

	Unit Size							80	,000 BT	UH						
Winter	Offic Size		Ur	ninsulat	ed			3/8-i	n. Insula	ation			1/2-i	n. Insula	ation	
Design	Pipe Dia. in.	1 1/2	2	2 1/2	3	4	1 1/2	2	2 1/2	3	4	1 1/2	2	2 1/2	3	4
Temp	20	15	40	40	35	30	15	50	90	75	65	15	50	70	70	70
°F	0	15	20	15	10	5	15	50	45	35	30	15	50	50	40	35
'	-20	15	10	5			15	35	30	20	15	15	40	30	25	15
	-40	10	5				15	25	20	15	5	15	30	25	20	10

	Unit Size						100,000	BTUH					
	Unit Size		Unins	ulated			3/8-in. In	sulation			1/2-in. lr	sulation	
Winter	Pipe Dia. in.	2	2 1/2	3	4	2	2 1/2	3	4	2	2 1/2	3	4
Design	20	20	50	40	35	20	80	95	80	20	80	105	90
Temp °F	0	20	20	15	10	20	55	45	35	20	65	55	45
	-20	15	10	5		20	35	30	20	20	45	35	25
	-40	10	5			20	25	20	10	20	30	25	15

	Unit Size				120,	000 B	TUH							140,	,000 B	TUH			
	Offic Size	Un	insula	ted	3/8-in	ı. Insu	lation	1/2-in	. Insu	lation	Un	insula <sup>.</sup>	ted	3/8-in	ı. Insul	ation	1/2-in	ı. Insul	lation
Winter	Pipe Dia. in.	2 1/2	3	4	2 1/2	3	4	2 1/2	3	4	2 1/2	3	4	2 1/2	3	4	2 1/2	3	4
Design	20	10	50	40	10	75	95	10	75	105	5	55	50	5	65	105	5	65	125
Temp °F	0	10	20	15	10	55	45	10	65	50	5	25	15	5	65	50	5	65	60
	-20	10	10		10	35	25	10	45	30	5	10	5	5	45	30	5	50	40
	-40	10	5		10	25	15	10	30	20	5	5		5	30	20	5	35	25

### Maximum Allowable Exposed Vent Length in Unconditioned Space - Meters

	11				40,	000* E	BTUH									60,00	0 BTU	JH				
	Unit Size	Uni	nsula	ated		3/8-in sulati		In	1/2-in sulati		ι	Jnins	ulated	t	3/8	3-in. In	sulati	ion	1/:	2-in. lr	sulati	on
Winter Design Temp °C	Pipe Dia. mm	38	51	64	38	51	64	38	51	64	38	51	64	76	38	51	64	76	38	51	64	76
Temp °C	-7	6.1	6.1	6.1	6.1	15.2	13.7	6.1	18.3	15.2	6.1	9.1	9.1	7.6	6.1	22.9	19.8	18.3	6.1	25.9	22.9	19.8
	-18	3.0	1.5	1.5	6.1	7.6	6.1	6.1	9.1	7.6	4.6	4.6	3.0	3.0	6.1	12.2	9.1	7.6	6.1	13.7	12.2	9.1
	-29	1.5			6.1	4.6	3.0	6.1	6.1	4.6	3.0	1.5			6.1	7.6	6.1	4.6	6.1	9.1	7.6	6.1
	-40				4.6	3.0	1.5	4.6	4.6	3.0	1.5				6.1	4.6	4.6	3.0	6.1	6.1	4.6	3.0

	Unit Size							80,	,000 BT	UH						
	Utilit Size		Ur	ninsulat	ed			3/8-i	n. Insul	ation			1/2-i	n. Insul	ation	
Winter	Pipe Dia. mm	38	51	64	76	102	38	51	64	76	102	38	51	64	76	102
Design	-7	4.6	12.2	12.2	10.7	9.1	4.6	15.2	27.4	22.9	19.8	4.6	15.2	21.3	21.3	21.3
Temp °C	-18	4.6	6.1	4.6	3.0	1.5	4.6	15.2	13.7	10.7	9.1	4.6	15.2	15.2	12.2	10.7
	-29	4.6	3.0	1.5			4.6	10.7	9.1	6.1	4.6	4.6	12.2	9.1	7.6	4.6
	-40	3.0	1.5				4.6	7.6	6.1	4.6	1.5	4.6	9.1	7.6	6.1	3.0

	Unit Size						100,00	BTUH					
	Utilit Size		Unins	ulated			3/8-in. Ir	sulation			1/2-in. In	sulation	
Winter	Pipe Dia. mm	51	64	76	102	51	64	76	102	51	64	76	102
Design	-7	6.1	15.2	12.2	10.7	6.1	24.4	28.9	24.4	6.1	24.4	32.0	27.4
Temp °C	-18	6.1	6.1	4.6	3.0	6.1	16.8	13.7	10.7	6.1	19.8	16.7	13.7
	-29	4.6	3.0	1.5		6.1	10.7	9.1	6.1	6.1	13.7	10.7	7.6
	-40	3.0	1.5			6.1	7.6	6.1	3.0	6.1	9.1	7.6	4.6

	Unit Size				120	,000 B	TUH							140	,000 B	ГИН			
Winter		Un	insula	ted	3/8-ir	. Insu	ation	1/2-ir	. Insu	lation	Un	insula	ted	3/8-ir	ı. Insul	ation	1/2-ir	. Insul	ation
Design	Pipe Dia. mm	64	76	102	64	76	102	64	76	102	64	76	102	64	76	102	64	76	102
Temp °C	-7	3.0	15.2	12.2	3.0	22.9	28.9	3.0	22.9	32.0	1.5	16.7	15.2	1.5	19.8	32.0	1.5	19.8	38.1
10	-18	3.0	6.1	4.6	3.0	16.8	13.7	3.0	19.8	15.2	1.5	7.6	4.6	1.5	19.8	15.2	1.5	19.8	18.3
	-29	3.0	3.0		3.0	10.7	7.6	3.0	13.7	9.1	1.5	3.0	1.5	1.5	13.7	9.1	1.5	15.2	12.2
	-40	3.0	1.5		3.0	7.6	4.6	3.0	9.1	6.1	1.5	1.5		1.5	9.1	6.1	1.5	35	7.6

<sup>\*</sup> Pipe length (ft) specified for maximum pipe lengths located in unconditioned spaces. Pipes located in unconditioned space cannot exceed total allowable pipe length calculated from Table 11.

<sup>†</sup> Insulation thickness based on R value of 3.5 per in.

# Installing the Vent Pipe Adapter and Combustion Air Pipe Adapter

# **A** CAUTION

## CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. To route the vent pipe and combustion air pipe through the furnace, the manufacturer supplied kit must be used. Failure to properly seal the blower compartment from the furnace vestibule could result in the circulation of carbon monoxide throughout the structure. The vent pipe and combustion air pipe must be a continuous pipe while passing through the blower compartment. Seals supplied in this kit must be installed per the instructions provided. Follow all procedures outlined in these instructions.

## **MARNING**

#### CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. **DO NOT** use cement to join polypropylene venting systems. Follow the polypropylene venting system manufacturer's instructions for installing polypropylene venting systems.

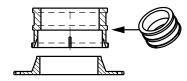
**NOTE:** The rubber coupling that attaches to the vent pipe adapter must be used. The adapter seals the vent pipe to the casing and reduces the strain on the vent elbow attached to the inducer.

1. Apply the gaskets to the vent pipe and combustion air pipe adapters. If supplied, remove and discard round center "slug" from interior of gasket, see Fig. 56.

**NOTE:** The vent pipe adapter can be distinguished from the inlet pipe adapter by the absence of an internal pipe-stopping ring. The vent pipe can pass through the vent pipe adapter; it cannot pass through the inlet pipe adapter.

- 2. Align the screw holes in the plastic vent pipe adapter with the dimples in the casing.
- 3. Pilot drill the screw holes for the adapter in the casing and attach the vent pipe adapter to the furnace with sheet metal screws
- 4. Slide the end of the rubber vent coupling with notches in it over the standoffs on the vent pipe adapter.
- 5. Insert a length of vent pipe through the coupling into the outlet of the vent elbow.
- 6. Tighten the clamp around the outlet of the vent elbow. Torque the clamp to 15 lb-in.





Attach gaskets to vent pipe and

Vent Coupling and Adapter

Fig. 56 – Vent Coupling and Adapter with Gaskets

# **A** NOTICE

The following instructions are for PVC/ABS DWV vent piping only. DO NOT USE THESE TECHNIQUES FOR POLYPROPYLENE VENT PIPING SYSTEMS. See the polypropylene vent system manufacturer's instructions for installing polypropylene venting systems.

Install the remaining vent and combustion air pipes as shown below. It is recommended that all pipes be cut, prepared, and preassembled before permanently cementing any joint.

- 1. Working from furnace to outside, cut pipe to required length(s).
- 2. De-burr inside and outside of pipe.
- Chamfer outside edge of pipe for better distribution of primer and cement.
- 4. Clean and dry all surfaces to be joined.
- 5. Check dry fit of pipe and mark insertion depth on pipe.
- 6. Insert the vent pipe into the vent elbow.
- 7. Torque clamp on vent elbow 15 lb-in.
- 8. Torque clamp on vent coupling 15 lb-in.
- 9. Insert the combustion air pipe into the adapter.
- 10. Pilot drill a screw hole through the adapter into the combustion air pipe and secure the pipe to the adapter with sheet metal screws. DO NOT DRILL INTO POLYPROPYLENE VENT PIPES. Use an optional accessory vent coupling, if needed.
- 11. Seal around the combustion air pipe with silicone or foil tape. SILICONE SEALERS MAY NOT BE APPROPRIATE FOR POLYPROPYLENE VENT SYSTEMS. SEE POLYPROPYLENE VENT SYSTEM MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS.
- 12. After pipes have been cut and preassembled, apply generous layer of cement primer to pipe fitting socket and end of pipe to insertion mark. Quickly apply approved cement to end of pipe and fitting socket (over primer). Apply cement in a light, uniform coat on inside of socket to prevent buildup of excess cement. Apply second coat. DO NOT CEMENT POLYPROPYLENE FITTINGS.
- 13. While cement is still wet, twist pipe into socket with 1/4-in. turn. Be sure pipe is fully inserted into fitting socket.
- 14. Wipe excess cement from joint. A continuous bead of cement will be visible around perimeter of a properly made joint.
- 15. Handle pipe joints carefully until cement sets.
- 16. Horizontal portions of the venting system shall be supported to prevent sagging. Space combustion air piping and vent piping hangars as shown in Table 10. Support pipes using perforated metal hanging strap or commercially available hangars or straps designed to support plastic pipe.
- 17. Slope the vent and combustion air piping downward towards furnace. A minimum slope of at least 1/4-in. (6 mm) per linear ft.(1-in (25 mm) per 4 ft.(1.2 M)) with no sags between hangers is required. See Caution Box below.

## **A** CAUTION

### FURNACE RELIABILITY HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in nuisance short cycling, frozen vent termination, and/or no heat.

Slope the vent and combustion air piping downward towards furnace a minimum of 1/4-in. (6 mm) per linear ft. of pipe.

- 18. Complete the vent and combustion air pipe installation by connecting the concentric vent or by installing the required termination elbows as shown in Fig. 38, Fig. 43 and Fig. 50. For Ventilated Combustion Air Termination, See Fig. 41.
- 19. Use appropriate methods to seal openings where combustion air pipe and vent pipe pass through roof or sidewall.

# **WARNING**

#### CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. **DO NOT** use cement to join polypropylene venting systems. Follow the polypropylene venting system manufacturer's instructions for installing polypropylene venting systems.

A13074

Table 14 – Hanger Spacing

				_	
			Material		
Diameter	PVC Sch 40	SDR 21 & 26	ABS	CPVC	Polypro- pylene
1 1/2-in.	3-ft.	2 1/2-ft.	3-ft.	3-ft.	3.25-ft.
38-mm	914-mm	762-mm	914-mm	914-mm	1000 mm
2-in.	3-ft.	3-ft.	3-ft.	3-ft.	3.25-ft.
51-mm	914-mm	914-mm	914-mm	914-mm	1000 mm
2 1/2-in.	3 1/2-ft.	3-ft.	3 1/2-ft.	3 1/2-ft.	3.25-ft.
64-mm	1067-mm	914-mm	1067-mm	1067-mm	1000 mm
3-in.	3 1/2-ft.	3-ft.	3 1/2-ft.	3 1/2-ft.	3.25-ft.
76-mm	1067-mm	914-mm	1067-mm	1067-mm	1000 mm
4-in.	4-ft.	3 1/2-ft.	4-ft.	4-ft.	3.25-ft.

# Installing the Vent Termination Roof Terminations

A roof termination of any type will require a 4-in. (102 mm) flashing for a 2 inch (50 mm ND) concentric vent kit, NAHA002CV or a 5-in. diameter (127 mm) flashing for a 3-inch (80 mm ND) concentric vent kit, NAHA001CV. For two-pipe or single pipe vent systems, a flashing for each pipe of the required diameter will be necessary.

It is recommended that the flashing be installed by a roofer or competent professional prior to installing the concentric vent. The terminations can be installed on a flat or pitched roof.

### **Concentric Vent**

Single or multiple concentric vent must be installed as shown in Fig. 38. Maintain the required separation distance between vents or pairs of vents as shown in Fig. 38 and all clearance shown in Fig. 43.

**NOTE:** Follow the instructions of the vent terminal manufacturer. These instructions are provided as a reference, only.

Cut one 4-in. (102 mm) diameter hole for 2-in. (50 mm ND) kit, or one 5-in. (127 mm) diameter hole for 3-in. (80 mm ND) kit in the desired location

Loosely assemble concentric vent/combustion air termination components together using instructions in kit.

Slide assembled kit with rain shield **REMOVED** through hole in wall or roof flashing.

**NOTE:** Do not allow insulation or other materials to accumulate inside of pipe assembly when installing it through hole.

Disassemble loose pipe fittings. Clean and cement using same procedures as used for system piping. DO NOT CEMENT POLYPROPYLENE FITTINGS.

# Two-Pipe (Direct Vent) and Single-Pipe (Ventilated Combustion Air) Terminations

Single and two pipe vent terminals must be installed as shown in Fig. 38 and 41. Maintain the required separation distance between vents or pairs of vents as shown in Fig. 38 and Fig. 39. and all clearance shown in Fig. 43.

## **NOTICE**

### RECOMMENDED SUPPORT FOR VENT TERMINATIONS

It is recommended that rooftop vent terminations in excess of 36 inches (1 M) in vertical length be supported by **EITHER** the Direct Vent Termination Kit shown in Table 10 or by field-supplied brackets or supports fastened to the structure.

Cut the required number of holes in the roof or sidewall for vent and (when used) combustion air pipes. Sidewall holes for two-pipe vent terminations should be side-by-side, allowing space between the pipes for the elbows to fit on the pipes.

Holes in the roof for direct-vent (two pipe) terminations should be spaced no more than 18 in. (457 mm) apart to help avoid vent gas recirculation into combustion air intake.

Termination elbows will be installed after the vent and (if used) combustion air pipe is installed.

### **Sidewall Terminations**

### **Concentric Vent Termination**

**NOTE:** Follow the instructions of the vent terminal manufacturer. These instructions are provided as a reference only.

Determine an appropriate location for termination kit using the guidelines provided in section "Locating The Vent Termination" in this instruction.

- 1. Cut one 4-in. diameter hole for 2-in. kit, or one 5-in. diameter hole for 3-in. kit.
- 2. Loosely assemble concentric vent/combustion air termination components together using instructions in kit.
- 3. Slide assembled kit with rain shield REMOVED through hole.

**NOTE:** Do not allow insulation or other materials to accumulate inside of pipe assembly when installing it through hole.

- 4. Locate assembly through sidewall with rain shield positioned no more than 1-in. (25 mm) from wall as shown in Fig. 38.
- Disassemble loose pipe fittings. Clean and cement using same procedures as used for system piping. DO NOT CEMENT POLYPROPYLENE FITTINGS.

# 2-Pipe (Direct Vent) and 1-Pipe (Ventilated Combustion Air) Vent Termination

**NOTE:** Follow the instructions of the vent terminal manufacturer. These instructions are provided as a reference, only.

# **A** NOTICE

### RECOMMENDED SUPPORT FOR VENT TERMINATIONS

It is recommended that sidewall vent terminations in excess of 24 inches (0.6 M) in vertical length be supported by **EITHER** the Direct Vent Termination Kit shown in Table 10 or by field-supplied brackets or supports fastened to the structure.

Determine an appropriate location for termination kit using the guidelines provided in section "Locating The Vent Termination" in this instruction.

- Cut two holes, one for each pipe, of appropriate size for pipe size being used.
- Loosely install elbow in bracket (if used) and place assembly on combustion-air pipe.
- 3. Install bracket as shown in Fig. 38 and 50.

**NOTE:** For applications using vent pipe option indicated by dashed lines in Fig. 38 and 41, rotate vent elbow 90° from position.

4. Disassemble loose pipe fittings. Clean and cement using same procedures as used for system piping. DO NOT CEMENT POLYPROPYLENE FITTINGS.

For Ventilated Combustion Air Terminations, terminate as shown in Fig. 39.

### (Direct Vent / 2-Pipe System ONLY)

When two or more furnaces are vented near each other, two vent terminations may be installed as shown in Fig. 38, but next vent termination, or pair of vent terminations, must be at least 36 in. (914 mm) away from the first two terminations. It is important that vent terminations be made as shown in Fig. 38 to avoid recirculation of vent gases.

#### **Inducer Outlet Restrictor**

The loose parts bag may contain an inducer outlet restrictor. The outlet restrictor is NOT used on these furnaces. Discard restrictor.

## Table 15 – Approved Combustion-Air and Vent Pipe, Fitting and Cement Materials

#### **MATERIALS**

	1. All pipe*, fittings*,	primers**, and solve	ents** must conform to A	American National Stan	dards Institute (ANSI) standa	rds and
LICA	American Society fo	r Testing and Materia	als (ASTM) standards			
USA	2. See Table below f	or approved materia	als for use in the U.S.A.			
	3. UL 1738 vent syst	ems must be compo	osed of pipe*, fittings**,	cements, and primers**	from the same supplier.	
	1. Installation in Can	ada must conform to	o the requirements of Ca	AN/CSA B149 code.		
CANADA	2. Vent systems mus	st be composed of p	ipe*, fittings*, cements,	and primers from the sa	ame supplier and listed to UL	C S636.
CANADA	3. Not all materials b	elow may be approv	ved or listed to ULC S63	36.		
	4. Factory accessory	concentric vent kits	s are ULC S636 listed.			
Material	Description	Tuna		ASTM / ULC	/ UL Specification	
Material	Description	Туре	Pipe*	Fittings*	Solvents/Primers**	Cements
	Pressure Pipe	Schedule 40	D1785 / UL 1738	_		
	DWV	Schedule 40	D1785 / D2665	D2466 or D2665	F656	D2564
PVC	SDR 26	N/A	D2241	D2400 01 D2003	1 030	D2304
FVC	SDR 21	N/A	D2241			
	IPEX	Schedule 40	ULC S636	ULC S636	ULC S636	ULC S636
	Royal Pipe	Schedule 40	ULC S636	ULC S636	ULC S636	ULC S636
	I ADO I	Cabadula 40	D0004	D0460	Class Classes For	
ABS	ABS	Schedule 40	D2661	D2468	Clear Cleaner For	D2235
	DWV-IPS Sizes	Schedule 40	D2661	D2661	ABS†	
	Pressure Pipe	Schedule 40	F441	F438	F656	F493
CPVC	SDR	N/A	F442	N/A		
CFVC	IPEX	Schedule 40	ULC S636	ULC S636	ULC S636	ULC S636
	Royal Pipe	Schedule 40	ULC S636	ULC S636	ULC S636	ULC S636

<sup>\*</sup> PVC and ABS pipe may use either DWV or pressure rated fittings.

<sup>†</sup> ABS plastic does not require a primer before solvent cementing. A cleaner for ABS is recommended to remove any surface residue. ABS cleaners are not subject to ASTM standards.

Polypropylene	Approved Manufacturer	Solvents Primers	Cements				
Poly Pro®	M & G Dura Vent	Not Perr	nitted				
Innoflue®	Centrotherm	Not Perr	nitted				
ECCO							
Polypropylene	ECCO Manufacturing	Not Perr	nitted				
Vent®	•						
NOTE: Polygrapylana vant systems are III. 1729 and III C S626 listed and accombled using machanical factoring systems symplicid by the vert							

NOTE: Polypropylene vent systems are UL – 1738 and ULC S636 listed and assembled using mechanical fastening systems supplied by the vent manufacturer.

## **Venting System Length Calculations**

The Total Equivalent Vent Length (TEVL) for **EACH** combustion air or vent pipe equals the length of the venting system, plus the equivalent length of elbows used in the venting system from Table 8.

Standard vent terminations or factory accessory concentric vent terminations count for zero deduction.

See vent system manufacturer's data for equivalent lengths of flexible vent pipe or other termination systems. **DO NOT ASSUME** that one foot of flexible vent pipe equals one foot of straight PVC/ABS DWV vent pipe.

Compare the Total Equivalent Vent Length to the Maximum Equivalent Vent Lengths in Table 11.

### Example 1

A direct-vent 60,000 BTUH furnace installed at 2100 ft. (640M). Venting system includes FOR EACH PIPE:

70 feet (22 M) of vent pipe, 65 feet (20 M) of combustion air inlet pipe, (3) 90° long-radius elbows, (2) 45° long-radius elbows, and a factory accessory concentric vent kit.

Can this application use 2" (50 mm ND) PVC/ABS DWV vent piping?

Measure the required linear length of air inlet and vent		Ì			70 ft.	Use length of the longer of the vent
pipe; insert the longest of the two here					(22 M)	or air inlet piping system
Add equiv length of (3) 90° long-radius elbows (use the highest number of elbows for either the vent or inlet pipe)	3	х	3 ft. (0.9 M)	=	9 ft. (2.7 M)	From Table 8
Add equiv length of (2) 45° long-radius elbows (use the highest number of elbows for either the vent or inlet pipe)	2	х	1.5 ft. (0.5 M)	II	3 ft. (0.9 M)	From Table 8
Add equiv length of factory concentric vent term					0 ft.	From Table 8
Add correction for flexible vent pipe, if any					0 ft.	From Vent Manufacturer's instructions; zero for PVC/ABS DWV
Total Equivalent Vent Length (TEVL)					82 ft. (25 M)	Add all of the above lines
			1			
Maximum Equivalent Vent Length (MEVL)					95 ft. (29 M)	For 2" pipe from Table 11
Is TEVL less than MEVL?					YES	Therefore, 2" pipe MAY be used

<sup>\*\*</sup> Colored or tinted solvents or primers must be used where required by code in the USA

### Example 2

A direct-vent 60,000 BTUH furnace installed at 2100 ft. (640M). Venting system includes FOR EACH PIPE:

100 feet (30 M) of vent pipe, 95 feet (29 M) of combustion air inlet pipe, (3) 90° long-radius elbows, and a polypropylene concentric vent kit. Also includes 20 feet (6.1 M) of flexible polypropylene vent pipe, included within the 100 feet (30 M) of vent pipe.

VERIFY FROM POLYPROPYLENE VENT MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS for the multiplier correction for flexible vent pipe.

Can this application use 60mm o.d. (2") polypropylene vent piping? If not, what size piping can be used?

Measure the required linear length of RIGID air in	let and v	ent pipe	=	80 ft.	Use length of the longer of the vent	
longest of the two here: 100 ft. Of rigid pipe	- 20 ft. C	of flexible	e pipe	_	(24 M)	or air inlet piping system
Add equiv length of (3) 90° long-radius elbows (use the highest number of elbows for either the vent or inlet pipe)	3	х	5 ft. (1.5 M)	=	15 ft. (4.6 M)	
Add equiv length of 45° long-radius elbows (use the highest number of elbows for either the vent or inlet pipe)	0	х		=	0 ft. (0 M)	Example from polypropylene vent manufacturer's instructions, Verify from vent manufacturer's instructions.
Add equiv length of factory concentric vent term	9	х	3.3 ft (0.9 M)	=	30 ft. (9 M)	- manuacturer s instructions.
Add correction for flexible vent pipe, if any	2*	х	20 ft. (6.1 M)	=	40 ft. (12.2 M)	
* VERIFY FROM VENT MANUFACTURER'S INS	TRUCTI	ONS; F	or example	only, as	ssume 1 meter of	f flexible 60mm (2") or 80mm (3") polypropylene
pipe equals 2.0 meters (6.5 ft.) of PVC/ABS pipe.						
Total Equivalent Vent Length (TEVL)					165 ft. (50 M)	Add all of the above lines
Maximum Equivalent Vent Length (MEVL)					95 ft. (29 M)	For 2" pipe from Table 11
Is TEVL less than MEVL?					NO	Therefore, 60mm (2") pipe may NOT be used; try 80mm (3")
Maximum Equivalent Vent Length (MEVL)					185 ft. (57 M)	For 3" pipe from Table 11
Is TEVL less than MEVL?					YES	Therefore, 80mm (3") pipe MAY be used

# START-UP, ADJUSTMENT, AND SAFETY CHECK

## **A** NOTICE

Important Installation and Start-up Procedures

Failure to follow this procedure may result in a nuisance smoke or odor complaint.

The manifold pressure, gas rate by meter clocking, temperature rise and operation must be checked after installation. Minor smoke and odor may be present temporarily after start-up from the manufacturing process. Some occupants are more sensitive to this minor smoke and odor. It is recommended that doors and windows be open during the first heat cycle.

### General

 Furnace must have a 115-v power supply properly connected and grounded.

**NOTE:** Proper polarity must be maintained for 115-v wiring. Control status indicator light flashes code 10 and furnace does not operate if polarity is incorrect or if furnace is not grounded.

- Thermostat wire connections at terminals R, W/W1, G, and Y/Y2
  must be made at 24-v terminal block on furnace control. See
  communicating wall control instructions for proper wiring of
  communicating controls.
- 3. Natural gas service pressure must not exceed 0.5 psig (14- in. w.c., 350 Pa), but must be no less than 0.16 psig (4.5-in. w.c., 1125 Pa).
- 4. Blower door must be in place to complete 115-v electrical circuit and supply power to the furnace components.

# **A** CAUTION

#### UNIT OPERATION HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in intermittent unit operation or performance dissatisfaction.

These furnaces are equipped with a manual reset limit switch in burner assembly. This switch opens and shuts off power to the gas valve if an overheat condition (flame rollout) occurs in the burner assembly/enclosure. Correct inadequate combustion-air supply, improper gas pressure setting, improper burner or gas orifice positioning, or improper venting condition before resetting switch. DO NOT jumper this switch.

Before operating furnace, check flame rollout manual reset switch for continuity. If necessary, press button to reset switch.

EAC-1 terminal is energized whenever blower operates, HUM terminal is only energized when blower is energized in heating.

## **Setup Switches**

There are four (4) sets of setup switches on the furnace control board. These switches configure the furnace for correct application requirement. They also select the airflow settings for Air Conditioning and Continuous Fan airflows.

The Setup Switch locations are shown and described on Fig. 57. The setup switches are also shown on the unit wiring label.

#### Setup Switches (SW1)

The furnace control has eight (8) setup switches that may be set to meet the application requirements. Refer to Fig. 57 and the Adjustments section for setup switch configurations. To set these setup switches for the appropriate requirement:

- 1. Remove blower door.
- 2. Locate setup switches on furnace control.

- 3. Configure the set-up switches as necessary for the application.
- 4. Replace blower door.

**NOTE:** If a bypass humidifier is used, setup switch SW1-3 (Min/Int Heat Rise Adjust) should be in ON position. This compensates for the increased temperature in return air resulting from bypass.

**NOTE:** If modulating dampers are used, blower motor automatically compensates for modulating dampers.

#### Air Conditioning (A/C) Setup Switches (SW2)

The air conditioning setup switches are used to match furnace airflow to required cooling airflow or high stage cooling airflow when a two-stage outdoor unit is used. Refer to Fig. 57 and the Adjustments section for setup switch configurations.

To set the desired cooling airflow:

- 1. Remove blower door.
- 2. Locate A/C setup switches on furnace control.
- 3. Determine air conditioning tonnage used.
- 4. Configure the switches for the required cooling airflow.

**NOTE:** Incorrect airflow caused by improper A/C switch setup may cause condensate blow-off or a frozen indoor coil in the cooling mode.

5. Replace blower door.

## Continuous Fan (CF) Setup Switches (SW3)

The Continuous Fan airflow selection via Setup switches SW3 is also the switch setting for low-speed cooling when the furnace is used with a

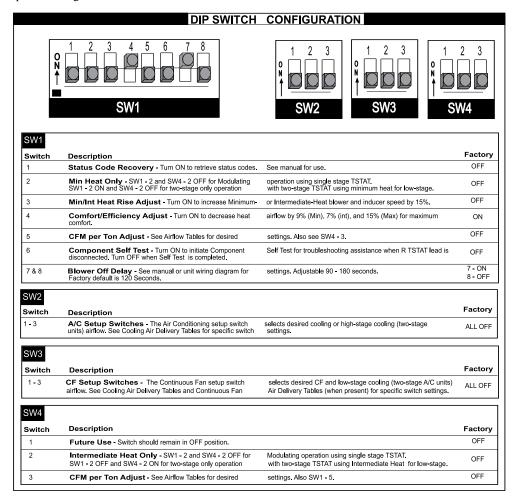
two-speed cooling or heat pump unit. Refer to Table 5 and the Adjustments section for setup switch configurations. This setup feature allows continuous fan airflow or low-cooling airflow to be adjusted. To set desired continuous fan airflow or low-cooling airflow:

- 1. Remove blower door.
- 2. Locate CF setup switches on furnace control.
- 3. Determine desired continuous fan airflow or low-cooling airflow.
- Configure the switches for the required continuous fan or low-cooling airflow.
- 5. Replace blower door.

### **Additional Setup Switches (SW4)**

The furnace control has three (3) additional setup switches labeled SW4. Setup switch SW4-2 can be used to lock the furnace into intermediate heat. When setup switch SW4-2 is ON it will over ride setup switch SW1-2 if it is ON. SW4-3 is used to adjust airflow. Refer to Fig. 57 and the Adjustments section for setup switch configurations. To activate setup switch SW4-2 and SW4-3:

- 1. Remove blower door.
- 2. Locate setup switch SW4 on furnace control.
- Configure the switches for the required heat stages and airflow if necessary.
- 4. Replace blower door.



A200365

Fig. 57 - Furnace Setup Switches and Description

NOTE: If SW4-1 is turned ON position, the furnace control will NOT communicate with a communicating system wall control.

## **Prime Condensate Trap with Water**

# **WARNING**

#### CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow these warnings could result in personal injury or death.

Failure to use a properly configured trap or NOT water-priming trap before operating furnace may allow positive pressure vent gases to enter the structure through drain tube. Vent gases contain carbon monoxide which is tasteless and odorless.

# **A** CAUTION

#### UNIT OPERATION HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in intermittent unit operation or performance satisfaction.

Condensate trap must be PRIMED or proper draining may not occur. The condensate trap has two internal chambers which can ONLY be primed by pouring water into the inducer drain side of condensate trap.

 Remove upper and middle collector box drain plugs opposite of the condensate trap. See Fig. 58.

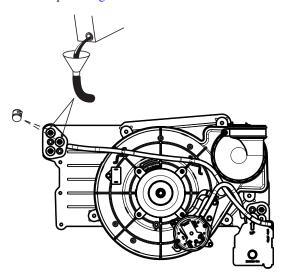


Fig. 58 – Priming Condensate Trap (Appearance May Vary)

- Connect field-supplied 5/8-in. (16 mm) ID tube with attached funnel to upper collector box drain connection, see Fig. 58.
- 3. Pour one quart (liter) of water into funnel/tube. Water should run through collector box, overfill condensate trap, and flow into open field drain
- 4. Remove funnel; replace collector box drain plug.
- 5. Connect field-supplied 5/8-in. (16 mm) ID tube to middle collector box drain port.
- Pour one quart (liter) of water into funnel/tube. Water should run through collector box, overfill condensate trap, and flow into open field drain.
- 7. Remove funnel and tube from collector box and replace collector box drain plug.

### **Purge Gas Lines**

If not previously done, purge the lines after all connections have been made and check for leaks.

## **WARNING**

### FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Never purge a gas line into a combustion chamber. Never test for gas leaks with an open flame. Use a commercially available soap solution made specifically for the detection of leaks to check all connections. A fire or explosion may result causing property damage, personal injury or loss of life.

## **Adjustments**

# **A** CAUTION

### FURNACE DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution could result in reduced furnace life.

DO NOT push or force gas valve adjusting screw. This can result in damage to the adjustment screw resulting in incorrect manifold pressure, which can result in a no heat situation or shorten the life of the heat exchangers.

# **A** CAUTION

### FURNACE DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in reduced furnace life.

DO NOT redrill orifices. Improper drilling (burrs, out-of-round holes, etc.) can cause excessive burner noise and misdirection of burner flames. This can result in flame impingement of heat exchangers, causing failures, see Fig. 59.

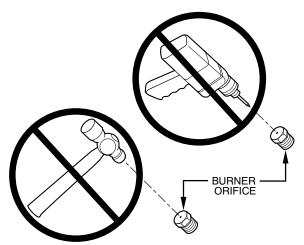


Fig. 59 - Orifice Hole

A93059

For proper operation and long term reliability, the Furnace input rate must be within +/-2 percent of input rate on furnace rating plate or as adjusted for altitude.

The gas input rate on rating plate is for installations at altitudes up to 2000 ft. (609.6M).

A11392

# **NOTICE**

The NATURAL GAS manifold pressure adjustments in Tables 18 and 19 compensate for BOTH altitude AND gas heating value. DO NOT apply an additional derate factor to the pressures show in Table 19 or Table 20. The values in this table are NOT referenced to sea level; they are AS-MEASURED AT ALTITUDE.

The heating content of natural gas at altitude may already provide for a reduction in capacity of the furnace. Be sure to obtain the expected in-season gas heating value of the gas from the gas supplier BEFORE making any adjustments for capacity or altitude. Refer to Table 19 or Table 20. No adjustments to the furnace may be necessary at altitude for certain gas heating values.

Refer to the instructions provided in the factory-specified LP/Propane conversion kit for instructions for setting gas manifold pressures for LP/Propane applications.

In the USA, the input rating for altitudes above 2000 ft. (609.6M) must be reduced by 2 percent for each 1000 ft. (304.8M) above sea level. Refer to Table 16.

In Canada, the input rating must be reduced by 5 percent for altitudes of 2000 ft. (609.6M) to 4500 ft. (1371.6M) above sea level. The natural gas manifold pressures in Tables 18 and 19 adjust for BOTH altitude and natural gas heating value.

Table 16 – Altitude Derate Multiplier for U.S.A.\*

ALTI <sup>*</sup>	TUDE	PERCENT	DERATE
FT.	М	OF DERATE	MULTIPLIER FACTOR*
0–2000	0-610	0	1.00
2001–3000	610-914	4-6	0.95
3001-4000	914-1219	6-8	0.93
4001–5000	1219-1524	8-10	0.91
5001-6000	1524-1829	10-12	0.89
6001–7000	1829-2134	12-14	0.87
7001–8000	2134-2438	14-16	0.85
8001–9000	2438-2743	16-18	0.83
9001–10,000	2743-3048	18-20	0.81

<sup>\*</sup>Derate multiplier factors are based on midpoint altitude for altitude range.

**NOTE:** For Canadian altitudes of 2000 to 4500 ft. (610 to 1372 M), use USA altitudes of 2001 to 2000 ft. (611 to 914 M) in Table 13.

To adjust manifold pressure to obtain the proper input rate, first, determine if the furnace has the correct orifice installed. At higher altitudes or different gas heat contents, it may be necessary to change the factory orifice to a different orifice. Tables have been provided in the furnace installation instructions to match the required orifice to the manifold pressure to the heat content and specific gravity of the gas.

## **A** NOTICE

### THERE ARE TWO MANIFOLD PRESSURE TABLES

Use Table 18 for all models EXCEPT (F/G)97CMN0602120 Use Table 19 for all models (F/G)97CMN0602120 ONLY

To do this:

- Obtain average yearly gas heat value (at installed altitude) from local gas supplier.
- 2. Obtain average yearly specific gravity from local gas supplier.
- Find installation altitude range for your installation in the manifold pressure tables. See Table 13 for 20,000 BTUh Max-Heat/8,000 BTUh min-heat per burner or Table 14 for 20,200 BTUh Max-Heat/8,000 BTUh Min-Heat per burner.
- 4. Find closest natural gas heat value and specific gravity in Table 13 or Table 14 depending on furnace gas input rate.

- Follow heat value and specific gravity lines to point of intersection to find orifice size and maximum and minimum manifold pressure settings for proper operation.
- Check and verify burner orifice size in furnace. NEVER ASSUME ORIFICE SIZE. ALWAYS CHECK AND VERIFY.

# ! NOTICE

If orifice hole appears damaged or it is suspected to have been redrilled, check orifice hole with a numbered drill bit of correct size. Never redrill an orifice. A burr-free and squarely aligned orifice hole is essential for proper flame characteristics.

 Replace original orifice with correct size, if required by Table 13 or Table 14 depending on furnace gas input rate. Use only factory-supplied orifices, see EXAMPLE 1.

EXAMPLE 1 - 80,000 BTUH INPUT:

EXAMPLE: 0 - 2000 ft. (0 - 609.6M) altitude

Heating value = 1050 Btu/cu ft.

Specific gravity = 0.62 Therefore: Orifice No. 44

\* Furnace is shipped with No. 44 orifices. In this example, all main burner orifices are the correct size and do not need to be changed to obtain proper input rate.

Manifold pressure: 3.4-in. w.c. for maximum heat, 0.55-in. w.c. for minimum heat.

**NOTE:** To convert gas manifold Table pressures to Pascals, multiply the in. w.c. value by 249.1 Pa/in. w.c. (1 in. w.c. = 249.1 Pa).

### **Check Inlet Gas Pressure**

The inlet gas pressure must be checked with the furnace operating in maximum heat. This is necessary to make sure the inlet gas pressure does not fall below the minimum pressure of 4.5 in. w.c. for natural gas. The maximum inlet gas pressure is 13.6 in. of water column. If the inlet pressure is too low, you will not be able to adjust the manifold pressure to obtain the proper input rate. To check the inlet gas pressure:

- 1. Make sure the gas supply is turned off to the furnace and at the electric switch on the gas valve.
- 2. Loosen set screw on inlet tower pressure tap no more than one full turn with a 3/32-in. hex wrench or remove the 1/8 in. NPT plug from the inlet pressure tap on the gas valve.
- 3. Connect a manometer to the inlet pressure tap on gas valve.
- 4. Turn on furnace power supply.
- 5. Turn gas supply manual shutoff valve to ON position.
- 6. Turn furnace gas valve switch to ON position.
- 7. Jumper the R to W/W1 and W2 thermostat connections at the furnace control board.
- 8. When main burners ignite, confirm inlet gas pressure is Between  $4.5 \ \text{in. w.c.}$  and  $13.6 \ \text{in. w.c.}$
- Remove jumper across thermostat connections to terminate call for heat. Wait until the blower off delay is completed.
- 10. Turn furnace gas valve electric switch to OFF position.
- 11. Turn gas supply manual shutoff valve to OFF position.
- 12. Turn off furnace power supply.
- 13. Remove manometer from the inlet pressure tap of the gas valve.

# **⚠** WARNING

#### FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Inlet pressure tap set screw must be tightened and 1/8-in. NPT pipe plug must be installed to prevent gas leaks.

14. Tighten set screw on inlet tower pressure tap with 3/32-in. hex wrench, or if 1/8-in. NPT plug was removed, apply pipe dope sparingly to end of plug and re-install in the gas valve.

## **Adjust Manifold Pressure - Maximum Heat**

For proper operation and long term reliability, the manifold pressure must be adjusted within +/-2 percent of input rate on furnace rating plate.

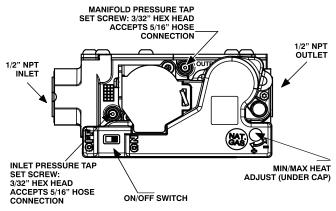
The modulating furnace manifold pressure is set at two points. The first point is Maximum Heat. The second point is Minimum Heat. Do not adjust Intermediate Heat manifold pressure. Intermediate Heat manifold pressure is checked as part of the temperature rise, but is not adjustable. Always adjust Maximum Heat first, then Minimum Heat.

## **NOTICE**

DO NOT set Maximum Heat manifold pressure less than 3.2-in. w.c. or more than 3.8 in. w.c. for natural gas. If required manifold pressure is outside this range, change main burner orifices to obtain manifold pressure in this range.

To adjust manifold pressure to obtain input rate for Maximum Heat:

- 1. Make sure the gas supply is turned off to the furnace and at the electric switch on the gas valve.
- 2. Loosen set screw on manifold tower pressure tap no more than one full turn with a 3/32-in. hex wrench, or remove the 1/8 in. NPT plug from the manifold pressure tap on the gas valve, see Fig. 56.



Representative drawing only, some models may vary in appearance

Fig. 60 – Gas Valve with Tower Pressure Ports

- 3. Connect a manometer to the outlet pressure tap on gas valve.
- 4. Turn on furnace power supply.
- 5. Turn gas supply manual shutoff valve to ON position.
- 6. Turn furnace gas valve switch to ON position.
- Jumper the R to W/W1 and W2 thermostat connections at the furnace control board.
- 8. After the main burners ignite and the blower starts, confirm Maximum Heat manifold pressure is correct, based on the manifold pressure tables in the installation instructions.
- To adjust the Maximum Heat manifold pressure, slowly turn adjusting screw counterclockwise to decrease manifold pressure or clockwise to increase manifold pressure. Turn adjustment no more

than one click per second until you obtain the required manifold pressure, see Fig. 61.

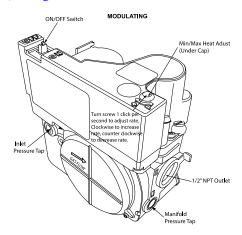


Fig. 61 - Gas Valve without Tower Pressure Ports

A10496

- 10. Main burner flame should be clear blue, almost transparent.
- 11. After adjusting the Maximum Heat manifold pressure, remove jumpers across thermostat connections to terminate the call for heat.
- 12. Wait for blower off-delay to finish then reset 115-v power to furnace.

## **Adjust Manifold Pressure - Minimum Heat**

To adjust manifold pressure to obtain input rate for Minimum Heat:

- 1. Turn SW1-2 ON and SW4-2 must be OFF.
- Jumper R and W/W1 thermostat connections on control to start furnace.
- After the main burners ignite and the blower starts, confirm Minimum Heat manifold pressure is correct, based on the manifold pressure tables in the installation instructions.
- 4. To adjust the Minimum Heat manifold pressure, slowly turn adjusting screw counterclockwise to decrease manifold pressure or clockwise to increase manifold pressure. Turn adjustment no more than one click per second until you obtain the required manifold pressure, see Fig. 61.
- After adjusting the manifold pressure, remove jumpers across thermostat connections to terminate the call for heat. Wait until the blower off delay is completed.
- 6. Move setup switch SW1-2 to the OFF position.

## WARNING

#### FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Manifold pressure tap set screw must be tightened and 1/8-in. NPT pipe plug must be installed to prevent gas leaks.

## **Clocking The Meter**

Verify natural gas input rate by clocking meter.

**NOTE:** Contact your HVAC distributor or gas supplier for metric gas meter Tables, if required.

- 1. Turn off all other gas appliances and pilots served by the meter.
- Move setup switches SW1-2 to ON position and SW4-2 to OFF.
   This keeps furnace locked in low--heat operation when only W/W1 is energized or high heat operation when R to W/W1 and W2 are jumpered.

- 3. Jumper R to W/W1 and W2. Run furnace for 3 minutes in maximum heat operation.
- 4. Measure time (in sec) for gas meter to complete one revolution and note reading. The 2 or 5 cubic feet dial provides a more accurate measurement of gas flow.
- 5. Refer to Table 17 for cubic ft. of gas per hr. Multiply gas rate cu ft./hr by heating value (BTUh/cu ft.) to obtain input rate.
- 6. If clocked rate does not match required input from Step 5, increase manifold pressure to increase input or decrease manifold pressure to decrease input. Repeat steps 3 through 5 until correct maximum heat input is achieved. See Table 19 or Table 20.

**NOTE:** Setup switches SW1-2 must be ON and SW4-2 must be OFF. This keeps furnace locked in minimum heat operation when R to W/W1 is energized. Repeat items 3 through 6 for minimum heat operation until minimum heat input is achieved.

- 7. Remove jumpers across thermostat connections to terminate the call for heat. Wait until the blower off delay is completed then reset 115-v power to furnace.
- 8. Restore furnace to normal operating condition.

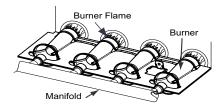


Fig. 62 - Burner Flame

A11461

- 9. Remove jumpers across thermostat connections to terminate the call for heat. Wait until the blower off delay is completed.
- 10. Disconnect 115 VAC power to furnace.
- 11. Turn gas valve ON/OFF switch to OFF.
- Remove water column manometer or similar device from manifold pressure tap.

# **MARNING**

#### FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Manifold pressure tap set screw must be tightened or 1/8-in. NPT pipe plug must be installed to prevent gas leaks.

- 13. Tighten set screw on manifold tower pressure tap with 3/32-in hex wrench, or if 1/8-in. NPT plug was removed, apply pipe dope sparingly to end of plug and reinstall in the gas valve.
- 14. Turn gas valve ON/OFF switch to ON.
- 15. Move setup SW1-2 on furnace control to position required for attached thermostat (OFF for single-stage thermostats, ON for two-stage thermostats).
- 16. Check for gas leaks and verify furnace operation.

Table 17 – Gas Rate (CU ft./hr)

SECONDS	SIZE C	OF TEST	Γ DIAL	SECONDS	SIZE OF TEST DIAL		
FOR 1 REV	1 Cu Ft.	2 Cu Ft.	5 Cu Ft.	FOR 1 REV	1 Cu Ft.	2 Cu Ft.	5 Cu Ft.
10	360	720	1800	50	72	144	360
11	327	655	1636	51	71	141	355
12	300	600	1500	52	69	138	346
13	277	555	1385	53	68	136	340
14	257	514	1286	54	67	133	333

Table 17 - Gas Rate (CU ft./hr) (Continued)

15	240	480	1200	55	65	131	327
16	225	450	1125	56	64	129	321
17	212	424	1059	57	63	126	316
18	200	400	1000	58	62	124	310
19	189	379	947	59	61	122	305
20	180	360	900	60	60	120	300
21	171	343	857	62	58	116	290
22	164	327	818	64	56	112	281
23	157	313	783	66	54	109	273
24	150	300	750	68	53	106	265
25	144	288	720	70	51	103	257
26	138	277	692	72	50	100	250
27	133	267	667	74	48	97	243
28	129	257	643	76	47	95	237
29	124	248	621	78	46	92	231
30	120	240	600	80	45	90	225
31	116	232	581	82	44	88	220
32	113	225	563	84	43	86	214
33	109	218	545	86	42	84	209
34	106	212	529	88	41	82	205
35	103	206	514	90	40	80	200
36	100	200	500	92	39	78	196
37	97	195	486	94	38	76	192
38	95	189	474	96	38	75	188
39	92	185	462	98	37	74	184
40	90	180	450	100	36	72	180
41	88	176	439	102	35	71	178
42	86	172	429	104	35	69	173
43	84	167	419	106	34	68	170
44	82	164	409	108	33	67	167
45	80	160	400	110	33	65	164
46	78	157	391	112	32	64	161
47	76	153	383	116	31	62	155
48	75	150	375	120	30	60	150
49	73	147	367				

## **Adjust Temperature Rise**

**NOTE:** Blower door must be installed when taking temperature rise reading. Leaving blower door off will result in incorrect temperature measurements, due to possible changes in duct static pressure and airflow.

# **A** CAUTION

### FURNACE DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in:

- Overheating the heat exchangers or condensing flue gases in heat exchanger areas not designed for condensate.
- Shortened furnace life
- Component damage.

Temperature rise must be within limits specified on furnace rating plate. Recommended operation is at midpoint of rise range or slightly above.

When setup switch SW1-4 is ON, operation will be near the high end of the rise range for improved comfort.

Furnace must operate within ranges of temperature rise specified on the furnace rating plate. Determine air temperature rise as follows:

- Place thermometers in return and supply ducts as near furnace as possible. Be sure thermometers do not see heat exchanger so that radiant heat does not affect readings. This practice is particularly important with straight-run ducts.
- 2. When thermometer readings stabilize, subtract return-air temperature from supply-air temperature to determine air temperature rise.

**NOTE:** Temperature rise can be determined for Minimum Heat, Intermediate Heat and Maximum Heat operation by locking the furnace in each mode of operation. The mode of operation is based on the position of Set-up switch SW1-2 and SW4-2 on the furnace control board.

The furnace is capable of automatically providing proper airflow to maintain the temperature rise within the range specified on furnace rating plate. If temperature rise is outside this range, proceed as follows:

- 1. Check gas input for minimum, intermediate and maximum heat operation.
- 2. Check derate for altitude if applicable.
- 3. Check all return and supply ducts for excessive restrictions causing static pressure greater than 0.5-in. w.c.
- Ensure Min/Int Heat Rise Adjust switch SW1-3 on furnace control is in ON position when a bypass humidifier is used. See Table 57 for switch location.
- Check Troubleshooting Guide for Variable-Speed Step Modulating Condensing Furnaces.
- 6. Verify correct model plug is installed.

To lock the furnace in Minimum Heat:

- Turn SW1-2 ON at the furnace control. Setup switch SW4-2 must be OFF
- Connect a jumper across R and W/W1 at the thermostat terminals at the furnace control.
- 3. Allow the burners to ignite and the blower to turn on.
- Allow the supply temperature to stabilize and verify the proper rise range.

If the temperature rise is too high or too low in Minimum Heat:

- 1. Remove jumpers from R and W/W1.
- 2. Wait until the blower off delay is completed.
- 3. Turn 115 VAC power off.
- Check the position of setup switch SW1-3. When set to ON, airflow is raised 18% for Minimum Heat and for Intermediate Heat. Factory default position is OFF.
- 5. Turn 115 VAC power on.
- 6. Re-check Minimum Heat Temperature Rise

To lock the furnace in Intermediate Heat:

- 1. Turn SW1-2 OFF and SW4-2 ON at the furnace control.
- 2. Connect a jumper across R and W/W1 at the thermostat terminals at the furnace control.
- 3. Allow the burners to ignite and the blower to turn on.
- 4. Allow the supply temperature to stabilize and verify the proper rise range.

If the temperature rise is too high or too low in Intermediate Heat:

- 1. Remove jumpers from R and W/W1.
- 2. Wait until the blower off delay is completed.
- 3. Turn 115 VAC power off.
- 4. Check the position of setup switch SW1-3. When set to ON, airflow is raised 18% for Minimum Heat and for Intermediate Heat. Factory default position is OFF.
- 5. Turn 115 VAC power on.
- 6. Re-check Minimum Heat Temperature Rise.

To lock the furnace in Maximum Heat:

- Connect a jumper across R and W/W1 and W2 at the thermostat terminals at the furnace control.
- 2. Allow the burners to ignite and the blower to turn on.
- Allow the supply temperature to stabilize and verify the proper rise range.

If the temperature rise is too high or too low in Maximum Heat:

- 1. Remove jumpers from R and W/W1 and W2.
- 2. Wait until the blower off delay is completed.
- 3. Turn 115 VAC power off.
- 4. Check the position of setup switch SW1-4. When set to OFF and SW1-3 is set to OFF, airflow is raised 10% for Minimum Heat, 7.5% for Intermediate Heat and 17.5% for Maximum Heat. Factory default position is ON. If SW1-3 is ON and SW1-4 is OFF, airflow is raised 18% for Minimum and Intermediate heat and 10% for Maximum Heat.
- 5. Turn 115 VAC power on.
- 6. Re-check Maximum Heat Temperature Rise.

After the temperature rise has been verified:

- 1. Remove jumpers from thermostat terminals.
- 2. Allow the blower off delay to complete.
- 3. Turn set-up switches SW1-2 and SW4-2 to the OFF position unless two-stage thermostat operation is desired, see Fig. 57.
- Proceed to "Adjust Blower Off Delay" or install blower door if complete.

# **MARNING**

#### FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Reinstall manifold pressure tap plug in gas valve to prevent gas leak.

# **A** CAUTION

### FURNACE OVERHEATING HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in reduced furnace life.

Recheck temperature rise. It must be within limits specified on the rating plate. Recommended operation is at the mid-point of rise range or slightly above.

## **Adjust Blower Off Delay (Heat Mode)**

- a. Remove blower door if installed.
- b. Turn Dip switch SW-7 or SW-8 ON or OFF for desired blower off delay, see Table 12 and Fig. 36, Fig. 57 and Fig. 70.)

Table 18 – Blower Off Delay Setup Switch

DESIRED HEATING MODE BLOWER OFF DELAY (SEC.)	(SW1-7	SWITCH AND -8) TION
` ′	SW1-7	SW1-8
	01117	01110
90	OFF	OFF
120	ON	OFF
150	OFF	ON
180	ON	ON

# Adjust Cooling Airflow – High-Speed and Low-Speed Cooling

The ECM blower can be adjusted for a range of airflow for low-speed or high-speed cooling, see Table 5 - Air Delivery - CFM (With Filter) and Fig. 57 - Furnace Setup Switches and Descriptions. Depending on the

model size, the cooling airflow can be adjusted from 1.5 to 6 tons based on 350 CFM ton.

**NOTE:** 6 ton airflow will truncate at 2200 CFM on applicable models.

## **Air Conditioning Setup Switch SW2**

The high-speed or single-speed cooling airflow is adjusted by turning Setup switches SW2-1, SW2-2 and SW2-3 either ON or OFF. Select the required airflow from Table 5. Table is based upon 350 CFM per ton. For other CFM per ton Setup switch selections, see Fig. 36 and Fig. 57.

## Continuous Fan (CF) Setup Switch SW3

The Continuous Fan airflow selection via Setup switches SW3 is also the switch setting for low-speed cooling when the furnace is used with a two-speed cooling or heat pump unit. Adjust SW3 to match the airflow required for low-speed cooling. Select the required airflow from Table 5 and Fig. 57.

**NOTE:** The airflow selected via SW3 (Low-Speed Cooling Airflow) cannot exceed the airflow selected via SW2 (High-Speed Cooling Airflow). For other CFM per ton Setup switch selections, see Fig. 36 and Fig. 57.

**NOTE:** The airflow settings for SW2 and SW3 selections are the same for high and low stage cooling, EXCEPT for the default values, see Table 5. For a complete explanation of cooling airflow, refer to the section titled "Sequence of Operation."

**NOTE:** The airflow table for continuous fan is different than the airflow table for low stage cooling, see Table 5.

# Adjust Continuous Fan Airflow (and Low-Speed Cooling Airflow)

Adjust continuous fan and low-stage cooling airflow using SW3 and refer to Fig. 57.

The continuous fan speed can be further adjusted at a conventional thermostat using the continuous fan speed select function. Changing the continuous fan speed at a conventional thermostat DOES NOT change the low-speed cooling airflow selected via SW3 at the control board. Refer to the section titled "Continuous Blower Speed Selection from Thermostat."

### **Check Safety Controls**

The flame sensor, gas valve, and pressure switch were all checked in the Start-up procedure section as part of normal operation.

- 1. Check Main Limit Switch
  - This control shuts off combustion system and energizes air-circulating blower motor, if furnace overheats. By using this method to check limit control, it can be established that limit is functioning properly and will operate if there is a restricted return-air supply or motor failure. If limit control does not function during this test, cause must be determined and corrected.
  - a. Run furnace for at least 5 minutes.
  - a. Gradually block off return air with a piece of cardboard or sheet metal until the limit trips.
  - b. Unblock return air to permit normal circulation.
  - c. Burners will re-light when furnace cools down.
- 2. Check Pressure Switch(es)

This control proves operation of the draft inducer blower.

- a. Turn off 115-v power to furnace.
- b. Disconnect inducer motor lead wires from wire harness.
- c. Turn on 115-v power to furnace.
- d. Set thermostat to "call for heat" and wait 1 minute. When pressure switch is functioning properly, hot surface igniter should **NOT** glow and control diagnostic light flashes a status code 3. If hot surface igniter glows when inducer motor is disconnected, shut down furnace immediately.
- e. Determine reason pressure switch did not function properly and correct condition.
- f. Turn off 115-v power to furnace.

- g. Reconnect inducer motor wires, replace blower door, and turn on 115-y power.
- h. Blower will run for 90 seconds before beginning the call for heat again.
- i. Furnace should ignite normally.

#### Checklist

- 1. Put away tools and instruments. Clean up debris.
- Verify that switches SW1-1 and SW1-6 are OFF and other setup switches are set as desired. Verify that switches SW1-7 and SW1-8 for the blower OFF DELAY are set as desired per Table 12.
- 3. Verify that blower and control doors are properly installed.
- Verify that there are no unsealed openings in the blower shelf or casing.
- 5. Cycle test furnace with room thermostat.
- 6. Check operation of accessories per manufacturer's instructions.
- 7. Review Owner's Manual with owner.
- 8. Attach literature packet to furnace.

### Table 19 – Orifice Size and Manifold Pressure (In. W.C.) for Gas Input Rate

To Be Used with Modulating Furnaces EXCEPT (F/G)97CMN0602120

# MODULATING FURNACE (TABULATED DATA BASED ON 20,000 BTUH MAX-HEAT / 8,000 BTUH MIN-HEAT PER BURNER, DERATED 2%/1000 FT (305M) ABOVE SEA LEVEL)

A	ALTITUDE	AVG. GAS	SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF NATURAL GAS							
	RANGE	HEAT VALUE		0.58		0.60	0.62			0.64
	AT ALTIT		Orifice	Mnfld Press	Orifice	Mnfld Press	Orifice	Mnfld Press	Orifice	Mnfld Press
	ft (m)	(Btu/cu ft)	No.	Max/Min	No.	Max/Min	No.	Max/Min	No.	Max/Min
		900	43	3.8 /0.60	42	3.2 /0.50	42	3.3 /0.55	42	3.4 /0.55
ā	0	925	43	3.6 /0.55	43	3.7 /0.60	43	3.8 /0.60	42	3.2 /0.50
U.S.A. and Canada	(0)	950	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.60	43	3.7 /0.60
Ca		975	44	3.7 /0.60	44	3.8 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.55
P P	to	1000	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.6 /0.60	44	3.8 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55
نَّه		1025	44	3.3 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.6 /0.55	44	3.7 /0.60
ν.	2000	1050	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.55	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55
-	(610)	1075	45	3.7 /0.60	45	3.8 /0.60	44	3.3 /0.50	44	3.4 /0.55
		1100	46	3.7 /0.60	46	3.8 /0.60	45	3.8 /0.60	44	3.2 /0.50
	U.S.A.	800	42	3.4 /0.55	42	3.5 /0.55	42	3.6 /0.55	42	3.7 /0.60
<u>a</u>	2001 (611)	825	43	3.8 /0.60	42	3.3 /0.50	42	3.4 /0.55	42	3.5 /0.55
nac	to	850	43	3.6 /0.60	43	3.7 /0.60	42	3.2 /0.50	42	3.3 /0.55
Ca	3000 (914)	875	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.7 /0.60	43	3.8 /0.60
and		900	44	3.7 /0.60	44	3.8 /0.60	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.55
U.S.A. and Canada	Canada	925	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.6 /0.60	44	3.8 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55
ν.	2001 (611)	950	44	3.3 /0.55	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.6 /0.55	44	3.7 /0.60
-	to	975	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.50	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55
	4500 (1372)	1000	46	3.8 /0.60	45	3.8 /0.60	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.55
		775	42	3.3 /0.55	42	3.4 /0.55	42	3.5 /0.55	42	3.6 /0.60
	3001	800	43	3.8 /0.60	42	3.2 /0.50	42	3.3 /0.55	42	3.4 /0.55
Only	(915)	825	43	3.6 /0.55	43	3.7 /0.60	43	3.8 /0.60	42	3.2 /0.50
٥	to	850	44	3.8 /0.60	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.55	43	3.7 /0.60
U.S.A.		875	44	3.6 /0.60	44	3.7 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55
j	4000	900	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.7 /0.60	44	3.8 /0.60
	(1219)	925	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.6 /0.55
		950	45	3.7 /0.60	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.55	44	3.4 /0.55
		750	42	3.3 /0.50	42	3.4 /0.55	42	3.5 /0.55	42	3.6 /0.55
	4001	775	43	3.7 /0.60	43	3.8 /0.60	42	3.3 /0.50	42	3.4 /0.55
Only	(1220)	800	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.60	43	3.7 /0.60	43	3.8 /0.60
ă	to	825	44	3.8 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.60
U.S.A.		850	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.7 /0.60	44	3.8 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55
-	5000	875	44	3.3 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.6 /0.55	44	3.7 /0.60
	(1524)	900	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.50	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55
<b>—</b>		925 725	46 42	3.8 /0.60 3.2 /0.50	45 42	3.7 /0.60 3.3 /0.55	<b>44</b> 42	3.2 /0.50 3.4 /0.55	<b>44</b> 42	3.3 /0.55 3.5 /0.55
	5001	750	43	3.7 /0.60	43	3.8 /0.60	42	3.4 /0.55	42	3.3 /0.55
_ >	(1525)	750 775	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55	42	3.7 /0.60	42	3.8 /0.60
Only	(1525)	800	43	3.7 /0.60	43	3.8 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55
ě	to	825	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.6 /0.55	43	3.7 /0.60	43	3.8 /0.60
U.S.A.	6000	850	44	3.3 /0.50	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.7 /0.00	44	3.6 /0.60
-	(1829)	875	45	3.7 /0.60	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.55	44	3.4 /0.55
	(1029)	900	46	3.7 /0.60	46	3.8 /0.60	45	3.8 /0.60	44	3.2 /0.50
_		675	42	3.4 /0.55	42	3.5 /0.55	42	3.6 /0.60	42	3.8 /0.60
	6001	700	42	3.4 /0.53	42	3.3 /0.50	42	3.4 /0.55	42	3.5 /0.55
_ ∠	(1830)	700 725	42	3.6 /0.60	42	3.7 /0.60	42	3.8 /0.60	42	3.3 /0.50
Only	(1030)	723 750	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.55	43	3.7 /0.60
4	to	775	44	3.6 /0.60	44	3.7 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55
U.S.A.	7000	800	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.6 /0.60	44	3.7 /0.60
1	(2133)	825	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.55	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55
	(=:,	850	46	3.8 /0.60	45	3.8 /0.60	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.55

MODULATING FURNACE
(TABULATED DATA BASED ON 20,000 BTUH MAX-HEAT / 8,000 BTUH MIN-HEAT PER BURNER,
DERATED 2%1000 FT (305M) ABOVE SEA LEVEL)

	DERATED 2%/1000 FT (305M) ABOVE SEA LEVEL)										
А	LTITUDE	AVG. GAS			SPECI	FIC GRAVITY	OF NA	TURAL GAS			
	RANGE	HEAT VALUE		0.58		0.60		0.62		0.64	
		AT ALTITUDE	Orifice	Mnfld Press							
	ft (m)	(Btu/cu ft)	No.	Max/Min	No.	Max/Min	No.	Max/Min	No.	Max/Min	
		650	42	3.4 /0.55	42	3.5 /0.55	42	3.6 /0.60	42	3.7 /0.60	
	7001	675	43	3.8 /0.60	42	3.2 /0.50	42	3.3 /0.55	42	3.4 /0.55	
Only	(2134)	700	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.7 /0.60	43	3.8 /0.60	42	3.2 /0.50	
ō.	to	725	44	3.8 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.60	
S.	10	750	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.7 /0.60	44	3.8 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55	
U.S.	8000	775	44	3.3 /0.55	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.7 /0.60	
	(2438)	800	45	3.8 /0.60	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.55	44	3.4 /0.55	
		825	46	3.7 /0.60	46	3.8 /0.60	45	3.8 /0.60	44	3.2 /0.50	
		625	42	3.4 /0.55	42	3.5 /0.55	42	3.6 /0.55	42	3.7 /0.60	
>	8001	650	43	3.8 /0.60	42	3.2 /0.50	42	3.3 /0.55	42	3.4 /0.55	
Only	(2439)	675	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.60	43	3.7 /0.60	42	3.2 /0.50	
ĕ	to	700	44	3.7 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.55	
U.S.A.	10	725	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.6 /0.60	44	3.7 /0.60	44	3.8 /0.60	
-	9000	750	44	3.3 /0.50	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.6 /0.55	
	(2743)	775	45	3.7 /0.60	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.50	44	3.4 /0.55	
	9001	600	42	3.3 /0.55	42	3.4 /0.55	42	3.6 /0.55	42	3.7 /0.60	
Only	(2744)	625	43	3.7 /0.60	42	3.2 /0.50	42	3.3 /0.55	42	3.4 /0.55	
ō	to	650	43	3.5 /0.55	43	3.6 /0.55	43	3.7 /0.60	43	3.8 /0.60	
U.S.A.	10	675	44	3.7 /0.60	44	3.8 /0.60	43	3.4 /0.55	43	3.5 /0.55	
ž	10000	700	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55	44	3.7 /0.60	44	3.8 /0.60	
	(3048)	725	44	3.2 /0.50	44	3.3 /0.55	44	3.4 /0.55	44	3.5 /0.55	

\* Orifice numbers shown in **BOLD** are factory-installed.

### Table 20 – Orifice Size and Manifold Pressure (In. W.C.) for Gas Input Rate

To Be Used with Modulating Furnaces (F/G)97CMN0602120 Only

(TABULATED DATA BASED ON 20,200 BTUH MAX-HEAT / 8,000 BTUH MIN-HEAT PER BURNER,

DERATED 2%/1000 FT (305M) ABOVE SEA LEVEL ALTITUDE SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF NATURAL GAS HEAT VALUE 0.64 0.58 0.60 0.62 AT ALTITUDE Orifice Mnfld Press Mnfld Press Orifice Mnfld Press Orifice Mnfld Press Max/Min Max/Min Max/Min 3.3 /0.50 3.5 /0.55 925 43 3.7 /0.55 43 3.8 /0.60 42 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 (0) 950 43 3.5 /0.55 43 3.6 /0.55 43 3.7 /0.60 3.8 /0.60 975 44 3.8 /0.60 3.4 /0.55 43 3.5 /0.55 3.6 /0.55 and 1000 44 3.6 /0.55 44 3.7 /0.60 44 3.8 /0.60 43 3.5 /0.55 1025 3.5 /0.55 44 3.8 /0.60 3.4 /0.55 3.6 /0.55 1050 44 3.3 /0.50 3.4 /0.55 3.5 /0.55 3.6 /0.55 1075 45 3.8 /0.60 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 3.4 /0.55 1100 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 800 3.4 /0.5 3.5 /0.55 3.7 /0.58 825 42 42 42 42 3.6 /0.55 2001 (611) 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 3.4 /0.55 3.3 /0.55 850 43 3.7 /0.60 43 3.8 /0.60 42 3.2 /0.50 3000 (914) 875 43 3.5 /0.55 43 3.6 /0.55 43 3.7 /0.60 3.8 /0.60 and 900 44 3 8 /0 60 43 3 4 /0 55 43 3 5 /0 55 43 3 6 /0 55 Canada 925 3.6 /0.55 44 3.7 /0.60 44 3.8 /0.60 43 3.4 /0.55 950 44 3.4 /0.55 44 3.5 /0.55 44 3.6 /0.55 44 3.7 /0.60 2001 (611) 975 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 3.4 /0.55 44 3.6 /0.55 4500 (1372 1000 45 44 3.2 /0.50 11 3.3 /0.50 11 3.4 /0.55 800 42 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 42 3.4 /0.55 3.5 /0.55 3.3 /0.50 (915) 825 3.6 /0.55 3.7 /0.60 only 43 43 3.2 /0.50 3.6 /0.55 3.8 /0.60 850 3.4 /0.55 3.5 /0.55 43 43 43 43 875 3.7 /0.60 3.8 /0.60 3.4 /0.55 3.6 /0.55 44 44 43 43 4000 900 3.6 /0.55 43 3.4 /0.55 44 3.5 /0.55 44 3.7 /0.60 (1219) 925 44 3.3 /0.50 44 3.4 /0.55 44 3.5 /0.55 44 3.6 /0.55 950 45 38/060 3 2 /0 50 3 4 /0 55 44 3 5 /0 55 3.4 /0.55 36/05 3.7 /0.55 4001 43 3.8 /0.60 42 3.2 /0.50 42 3.3 /0.50 3.4 /0.55 775 (1220) 800 43 3.6 /0.55 3.7 /0.60 43 3.8 /0.60 3.2 /0.50 only 825 3.8 /0.60 3.5 /0.55 3.6 /0.55 3.7 /0.60 3.5 /0.55 850 3.6 /0.55 3.7 /0.60 3.4 /0.55 43 875 3.4 /0.55 3.5 /0.55 3.6 /0.55 3.8 /0.60 (1524) 900 44 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 44 3.4 /0.55 44 3.6 /0.55 3.2 /0.50 3.4 /0.55 3.3 /0.50 925 725 3.3 /0.50 3.4 /0.55 3.6 /0.55 43 3.4 /0.55 5001 750 3.7 /0.60 42 3.2 /0.50 42 3.3 /0.50 42 (1525) 775 43 3.5 /0.55 43 3.6 /0.55 43 3.7 /0.60 3.2 /0.50 o J 800 44 3.8 /0.60 3.4 /0.55 43 3.5 /0.55 3.6 /0.55 825 44 3 5 /0 55 44 3.7 /0.55 44 3 8 /0 60 43 3 4 /0 55 6000 850 44 3.3 /0.50 44 3.4 /0.55 44 3.6 /0.55 44 3.7 /0.60 (1829) 875 45 3.8 /0.60 3.3 /0.50 44 3.4 /0.55 44 3.5 /0.55 3.3 /0.50

(TABULATED DATA BASED ON 20,200 BTUH MAX-HEAT / 8,000 BTUH MIN-HEAT PER BURNER

DERATED 2%/1000 FT (305M) ABOVE SEA LEVEL SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF N RANGE HEAT VALUE 0.62 0.64 AT ALTITUDE Mnfld Press Mnfld Pre Mnfld Press Orifice 3.7 /0.60 3.8 /0.60 675 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 3.4 /0.55 3.5 /0.55 (2134) 3.6 /0.55 43 3.7 /0.60 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 725 3.7 /0.60 3.4 /0.55 3.5 /0.55 43 3.6 /0.55 43 3.5 /0.55 8000 775 44 3.4 /0.55 44 3.5 /0.55 44 3.6 /0.55 44 3.7 /0.60 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 3.4 /0.55 3.5 /0.55 3 3 /0 50 3.8 /0.6 3.2 /0.50 42 3.3 /0.50 3.4 /0.55 3.5 /0.55 (2439) 675 3.6 /0.55 43 3.7 /0.60 43 3.8 /0.60 42 3.2 /0.50 3.7 /0.55 725 44 3.6 /0.55 44 3.7 /0.60 44 3.8 /0.60 43 3.4 /0.55 750 3.4 /0.55 3.5 /0.55 3.3 /0.50 (2743) 775 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.50 44 3.4 /0.55 3.8 /0.6 625 3.2 /0.50 3.3 /0.55 3.5 /0.55 (2744) 3.8 /0.60 650 43 3.5 /0.55 43 3.6 /0.55 43 3.8 /0.60 42 3.2 /0.50 to 10000 700 44 3.5 /0.55 44 3.6 /0.55 44 3.7 /0.60 44 3.8 /0.60 (3048)

\* Orifice numbers shown in **BOLD** are factory-installed.

700

725

750

775

800

825

(1830)

7000

(2133)

42

43

43

44

44

44

45 3.7 /0.60

3.2 /0.50 42

3.7 /0.60

3.4 /0.55

3.7 /0.60

3.5 /0.55 44

3.2 /0.50 44 3.4 /0.55 44 3.5 /0.55 44

43

3.3 /0.50 42

3.8 /0.60 42

3.5 /0.55 43 3.7 /0.55

3.8 /0.60 43

3.6 /0.55 44

3.2 /0.50 44

3.5 /0.55 42

3.2 /0.50

3.4 /0.55 43

3.7 /0.60 44

3.3 /0.50

3.6 /0.55 3.3 /0.50

3.8 /0.60

3.5 /0.55

3.8 /0.60

3 6 /0 55

3.4 /0.55

A11621A

43

A11621B

A11251A

### SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

Untrained personnel can perform basic maintenance functions such as cleaning and replacing air filters. All other operations must be performed by trained service personnel. A qualified service person should inspect the furnace once a year.

# WARNING

### FIRE, INJURY OR DEATH HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death and/or property damage.

The ability to properly perform maintenance on this equipment requires certain knowledge, mechanical skills, tools, and equipment. If you do not possess these, do not attempt to perform any service and maintenance on this equipment other than those procedures recommended in the Owner's Manual.

# **A** CAUTION

### ENVIRONMENTAL HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in environmental pollution. Remove and recycle all components or materials (i.e. oil, refrigerant, control board, etc.) before unit final disposal.

## WARNING

## ELECTRICAL SHOCK, FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death, or property damage.

Before installing, modifying, or servicing system, main electrical disconnect switch must be in the OFF position and install a lockout tag. There may be more than one disconnect switch. Lock out and tag switch with a suitable warning label. Verify proper operation after servicing. Always reinstall access doors after completing service and maintenance.

# **A** CAUTION

#### **ELECTRICAL OPERATION HAZARD**

Failure to follow this caution may result in improper furnace operation or failure of furnace.

Label all wires prior to disconnection when servicing controls. Wiring errors can cause improper and dangerous operation.

### **General**

These instructions are written as if the furnace is installed in an upflow application. An upflow furnace application is where the blower is located below the combustion and controls section of the furnace, and conditioned air is discharged upward. Since this furnace can be installed in any of the 4 positions shown in Fig. 2, you must revise your orientation to component location accordingly.

### **Electrical Controls and Wiring**

# **WARNING**

#### ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. There may be more than one electrical supply to the furnace. Check accessories and cooling unit for additional electrical supplies that must be shut off during furnace servicing. Lock out and tag switch with a suitable warning label.

The electrical ground and polarity for 115-v wiring must be properly maintained. Refer to Fig. 31 for field wiring information and to Fig. 70 for furnace wiring information.

**NOTE:** If the polarity is not correct, the STATUS LED on the control will flash code 10 and prevent the furnace from heating. The control system also requires an earth ground for proper operation of the control and flame-sensing electrode.

The 24-v circuit contains an automotive-type, 3-amp. fuse located on the control, see Fig. 36. Any shorts of the 24-v wiring during installation, service, or maintenance will cause this fuse to blow. If fuse replacement is required, use ONLY a 3-amp. fuse. The control LED will be off when fuse needs to be replaced.

### **Troubleshooting**

Refer to the service label, see Fig. 57.

The Troubleshooting Guide can be a useful tool in isolating furnace operation problems. Beginning with the word "Start," answer each question and follow the appropriate arrow to the next item, see Fig. 62.

The Guide will help to identify the problem or failed component. After replacing any component, verify correct operation sequence.

Proper instrumentation is required to service electrical controls. The control in this furnace is equipped with a Status Code LED (Light-Emitting Diode) to aid in installation, servicing, and troubleshooting. Status codes can be viewed at the indicator in blower door. The amber furnace control LED is either heartbeat, off or a code composed of 1 or 2 digits. The first digit is the number of short flashes, the second digit is the number of long flashes.

For an explanation of status codes, refer to service label located on control door or Fig. 57, and the troubleshooting guide which can be obtained from your distributor.

### **Retrieving Stored Fault Codes**

The stored status codes will NOT be erased from the control memory, when 115- or 24-v power is interrupted. The control will store up to the last 7 Status Codes in order of occurrence.

1. To retrieve status codes, proceed with the following:

**NOTE:** NO thermostat signal may be present at control, and all blower-OFF delays must be completed.

- a. Leave 115-v power to furnace turned on.
- b. Look into blower door indicator for current LED status.
- c. Remove blower door.

**NOTE:** The Status Codes cannot be retrieved by disconnecting the limit switch. To retrieve Status Codes, follow the procedure below.

- 2. Turn Setup Switch, SW1-1 "ON."
- 3. Manually close blower door switch.
- 4. Control will flash up to 7 Status Codes.
- 5. The last Status Code, or 8th Code, will be a heartbeat.
- 6. Turn SW1-1 "OFF."
- A continuously-lit Amber LED will appear and indicates proper operation.
- 8. Release blower door switch, install blower door and refer to the SERVICE label on the control door for more information.

### **Component Self-Test**

Component Test can ONLY be initiated by performing the following:

- 1. Remove blower door.
- 2. Remove the wire from the "R" terminal of the control board.
- 3. Turn Setup Switch, SW-1-6 "ON."
- 4. Manually close blower door switch.

Blower door switch opens 115-v power to control. No component operation can occur unless switch is closed. Caution must be taken when manually closing this switch for service purposes.

# **⚠** WARNING

### ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, or death. Blower door switch opens 115-v power to furnace control. No component operation can occur unless switch is closed. Exercise caution to avoid electrical shock from exposed electrical components when manually closing this switch for service purposes.

- 5. Component Test sequence will function as follows:
  - a. The furnace control CPU turns the inducer motor IDM ON at medium speed and keeps it ON through Step d.
  - b. The furnace control CPU will test communication with the modulating gas valve GV.
  - After waiting 15 seconds the furnace control CPU turns the hot surface igniter ON for 15 seconds, then OFF.
  - d. The furnace control CPU then turns the blower motor BLWM ON at mid-range airflow for 15 seconds, then OFF.
  - e. After shutting the blower motor BLWM OFF the furnace control CPU shuts the inducer motor IDM OFF.

**NOTE:** The EAC terminals are energized when the blower is operating. After the component test is completed, 1 or more status codes (heartbeat, 2+5, 3+5, 4+1, 4+2) will flash. See Service Label on control door or Service/Status Code Instructions for explanation of status codes.

**NOTE:** To repeat component test, turn setup switch SW1-6 to OFF and then back ON.

- f. Turn setup switch SW1-6 OFF.
- RELEASE BLOWER DOOR SWITCH, reattach wire to "R" terminal on furnace control board and replace blower door.

## **Care and Maintenance**

# **M** WARNING

## FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death and/or property damage.

Never store flammable or combustible materials on, near, or in contact with the furnace, such as:

- Spray or aerosol cans, rags, brooms, dust mops, vacuum cleaners, or other cleaning tools.
- 2. Soap powders, bleaches, waxes or other cleaning compounds, plastic or plastic containers, gasoline, kerosene, cigarette lighter fluid, dry cleaning fluids, or other volatile fluids.
- 3. Paint thinners and other painting compounds, paper bags, or other paper products. Exposure to these materials could lead to corrosion of the heat exchangers.

For continuing high performance and to minimize possible furnace failure, periodic maintenance must be performed on this furnace. Consult your local dealer about proper frequency of maintenance and the availability of a maintenance contract.

The minimum maintenance on this furnace is as follows:

- Check and clean air filter each month or more frequently if required. Replace if torn.
- 2. Check blower motor and wheel for cleanliness each heating and cooling season. Clean as necessary.
- 3. Check electrical connections for tightness and controls for proper operation each heating season. Service as necessary.
- 4. Inspect burner compartment before each heating season for rust, corrosion, soot or excessive dust. If necessary, have furnace and burner serviced by a qualified service agency.
- 5. Inspect the vent pipe/vent system before each heating season for water leakage, sagging pipes or broken fittings. Have vent pipes/vent system serviced by a qualified service agency.
- 6. Inspect any accessories attached to the furnace such as a humidifier or electronic air cleaner. Perform any service or maintenance to the accessories as recommended in the accessory instructions.

# **WARNING**

### ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Turn off the gas and electrical supplies to the furnace and install lockout tag before performing any maintenance or service. Follow the operating instructions on the label attached to the furnace.

# **WARNING**

# CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING AND FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death and/or property damage.

Never operate furnace without a filter or filtration device installed. Never operate a furnace with filter or filtration device access doors removed.

# **!** CAUTION

#### **CUT HAZARD**

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury.

Sheet metal parts may have sharp edges or burrs. Use care and wear appropriate protective clothing, safety glasses and gloves when handling parts, and servicing furnaces.

## Cleaning and/or Replacing Air Filter

The air filter type may vary depending on the application or orientation. The filter is external to the furnace casing. There are no provisions for an internal filter with this furnace. See "Filter Arrangement" under the "Installation" section of this manual.

# **WARNING**

# CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING AND FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death and/or property damage.

Never operate furnace without a filter or filtration device installed. Never operate a furnace with filter or filtration device access doors removed.

# **MARNING**

### ELECTRICAL SHOCK, FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death, or property damage.

Before installing, modifying, or servicing system, main electrical disconnect switch must be in the OFF position and install a lockout tag. There may be more than one disconnect switch. Lock out and tag switch with a suitable warning label. Verify proper operation after servicing. Always reinstall access doors after completing service and maintenance.

**NOTE:** If the filter has an airflow direction arrow, the arrow must point toward the blower.

To clean or replace filters, proceed as follows:

- 1. Turn off electrical supply to furnace.
- 2. Remove filter cabinet door.
- 3. Slide filter out of cabinet.
- 4. If equipped with permanent, washable filter, clean filter by spraying cold tap water through filter in opposite direction of airflow. Rinse filter and let dry. Oiling or coating of the filter is not recommended.
- If equipped with factory specified disposable media filter, replace only with a factory specified media filter of the same size.
- 6. Slide filter into cabinet.
- 7. Replace filter cabinet door.
- 8. Turn on electrical supply to furnace.

### **Blower Motor and Wheel Maintenance**

To ensure long life, economy, and high efficiency, clean accumulated dirt and grease from blower wheel and motor annually.

The inducer and blower motors are pre-lubricated and require no additional lubrication. These motors can be identified by the absence of oil ports on each end of the motor.

The following items should be performed by a qualified service technician. Clean blower motor and wheel as follows:

- 1. Turn off electrical supply to furnace.
- 2. Remove blower door.
- All factory wires can be left connected, but field thermostat and accessory wiring may need to be disconnected depending on their length and routing.
- 4. If the vent and combustion air pipe passes through the blower compartment, it will be necessary to remove the pipes from the blower compartment.

Disconnect the vent and combustion air pipe by:

- a. Loosen the clamps or screw on the vent couplings and combustion air pipe external to the furnace.
- b. Separate the pipes from the couplings and move them aside.
- Loosen the clamps on the vent couplings and combustion air pipe located on the blower shelf.
- d. Separate the pipes from the blower compartment and set aside.
- e. Remove the couplings from the pipe adapters and set aside.
- f. After servicing the blower, reverse steps a through e, resealing combustion air pipe per installation instructions.
- g. Tighten all clamps 15 lb -in.

See Fig. 63 For Steps 5 through 14.

Remove screws securing blower assembly to blower shelf and slide blower assembly out of furnace. Detach ground wire and disconnect blower motor harness plugs from blower motor.

NOTE: Blower wheel is fragile. Use care.

6. Clean blower wheel and motor by using a vacuum with soft brush attachment. Be careful not to disturb balance weights (clips) on

- blower wheel vanes. Do not bend wheel or blades as balance will be affected.
- 7. If greasy residue is present on blower wheel, remove wheel from the blower housing and wash it with an appropriate degreaser. To remove wheel:
  - a. Mark blower wheel location on shaft before disassembly to ensure proper reassembly.
  - b. Loosen set screw holding blower wheel on motor shaft.

**NOTE:** Mark blower mounting arms and blower housing so each arm is positioned at the same hole location during reassembly.

- c. Mark blower wheel orientation and cutoff plate location to ensure proper reassembly.
- d. Remove screws securing cutoff plate and remove cutoff plate from housing.
- e. Remove bolts holding motor mounts to blower housing and slide motor and mounts out of housing.
- f. Remove blower wheel from housing.
- g. Clean wheel per instructions on degreaser cleaner. Do not get degreaser in motor.
- 8. Reassemble motor and blower wheel by reversing items 7b through 7f. Ensure wheel is positioned for proper rotation.
- 9. Torque motor mounting bolts to 40 +/- 10 lb-in. when reassembling.
- 10. Torque blower wheel set screw to 160 +/- 20 lb-in. when reassembling.
- 11. Verify that blower wheel is centered in blower housing and set screw contacts the flat portion of the motor shaft. Loosen set screw on blower wheel and reposition if necessary.
- 12. Spin the blower wheel by hand to verify that the wheel does not rub on the housing.
- 13. Reinstall blower assembly in furnace.
- 14. Reinstall 2 screws securing blower assembly to blower deck.
- 15. Reconnect blower leads to furnace control. Refer to furnace wiring diagram, and connect thermostat leads if previously disconnected.

# **WARNING**

### ELECTRICAL OPERATION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Blower door switch opens 115-v power to control. No component operation can occur unless switch is closed. Caution must be taken when manually closing this switch for service purposes.

- 16. Downflow or horizontal furnaces with vent pipe through furnace only:
  - a. Install and connect short piece of vent pipe inside furnace to existing vent.
  - b. Connect vent connector to vent elbow.
- 17. Turn on electrical supply. If outdoor temperature is below 70°F, turn off circuit breaker to outdoor unit before running furnace in the cooling cycle. Turn outdoor circuit breaker on after completing cooling cycle, see Fig. 36. Manually close blower door switch. Use a piece of tape to hold switch closed. Check for proper rotation and speed changes between heating and cooling by jumpering R to G and R to Y/Y2 on furnace control thermostat terminals.

**NOTE:** If R-W/W1 thermostat terminals are jumpered at the time blower door switch is closed, blower will run for 90 sec before beginning a heating cycle.

- a. Perform component self-test as shown at the bottom of the SERVICE label, located on the control door.
- b. Verify blower is rotating in the correct direction
- 18. If furnace is operating properly, RELEASE BLOWER DOOR SWITCH. Remove any jumpers or reconnect any disconnected thermostat leads. Replace blower door.

19. Turn on gas supply and cycle furnace through one complete heating cycle. Verify the furnace temperature rise as shown in Adjustments Section. Adjust temperature rise as shown in Adjustments Section.

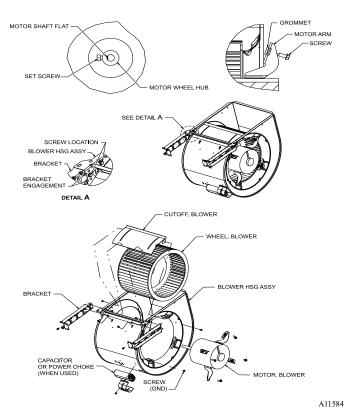


Fig. 63 – Blower Assembly

**NOTE:** Be sure to attach ground wire and reconnect blower harness plugs to blower motor.

### **Cleaning Burners and Flame Sensor**

The following items must be performed by a qualified service technician. If the burners develop an accumulation of light dirt or dust, they may be cleaned by using the following procedure:

**NOTE:** Use a back-up wrench on the gas valve to prevent the valve from rotating on the manifold or damaging the mounting to the burner assembly.

# ! WARNING

### ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Turn off the gas and electrical supplies to the furnace and install lockout tag before performing any maintenance or service. Follow the operating instructions on the label attached to the furnace.

#### Refer to Fig. 58.

- 1. Disconnect power at external disconnect, fuse or circuit breaker.
- 2. Turn off gas at external shut-off or gas meter.
- 3. Remove control door and set aside.
- 4. Turn electric switch on gas valve to OFF.
- Disconnect the gas pipe from gas valve and remove pipe from the furnace casing.
- 6. Disconnect the connector harness from gas valve (Modulating only) or remove individual wires from terminals on gas valve (All other models).

- 7. Disconnect Hot Surface Igniter (HSI) wires from HSI.
- 8. Disconnect Flame Sensor wire from Flame Sensor.

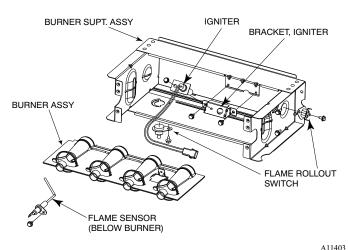


Fig. 64 – Burner Assembly

A1140.

- 9. Support the manifold and remove the 4 screws that secure the manifold assembly to the burner assembly and set aside. Note the location of the green/yellow wire and ground terminal.
- Inspect the orifices in the manifold assembly for blockages or obstructions. Remove orifice and clean or replace orifice.
- 11. Remove the four screws that attach the top plate of the casing to the furnace.
- Raise top plate up slightly and prop it up with a small piece of wood or folded cardboard.
- 13. Support the burner assembly and remove the screws that attach the burner assembly to the heat exchanger cell panel.
- 14. Remove wires from both rollout switches.
- 15. Slide one-piece burner out of slots on sides of burner assembly.
- 16. Remove the flame sensor from the burner assembly.
- 17. (Optional) Remove the Hot Surface Igniter (HSI) and bracket from the burner assembly.
- 18. Check igniter resistance. Nominal resistance is 40 to 70 ohms at room temperature and is stable over the life of the igniter.
- 19. Clean burner with a brush and a vacuum.
- 20. Clean the flame sensor with fine steel wool (0000 grade). Do not use sand paper or emery cloth.

To reinstall burner assembly:

- 1. Install the Hot Surface Igniter (HSI) and bracket in burner assembly.
- 2. Install flame sensor on burner.
- 3. Align the edges of the one-piece burner with the slots in the burner assembly and slide the burners forward until they are fully seated in the burner assembly.
- 4. Align the orifices in the manifold assembly with the support rings on the end of the burner.
- 5. Insert the orifices in the support rings of the burners.

**NOTE:** If manifold does not fit flush against the burner, do not force the manifold on the burner assembly. The burners are not fully seated forward in the burner assembly. Remove the manifold and check burner positioning in the burner assembly before re-installing the manifold.

- 6. Attach the green/yellow wire and ground terminal to one of the manifold mounting screws.
- 7. Install the remaining manifold mounting screws.
- 8. Check the igniter alignment, see Fig. 64, Fig. 65 and Fig. 66.
- 9. Attach the wires to the roll-out switches.

- 10. Align the burner assembly with the openings in the primary cell inlet panel and attach the burner assembly to the cell panel.
- 11. Connect the wire for the flame sensor.
- 12. Connect the wire for the Hot Surface Igniter.

**NOTE:** Use propane-resistant pipe dope to prevent leaks. Do not use PTFE thread-seal tape.

13. Install the gas pipe to the gas valve.

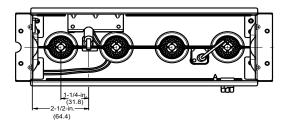


Fig. 65 – Igniter Position - Top View

A11405

- 14. Check for gas leaks with a commercially available soap solution made specifically for the detection of leaks.
- 15. Turn gas on at electric switch on gas valve and at external shut-off or meter
- 16. Turn power on at external disconnect, fuse or circuit breaker.
- 17. Run the furnace through two complete heating cycles to check for proper operation
- 18. Install control door when complete.

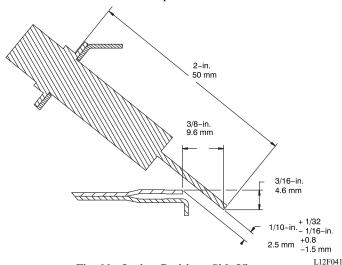


Fig. 66 – Igniter Position - Side View

# **MARNING**

### FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Never purge a gas line into a combustion chamber. Never test for gas leaks with an open flame. Use a commercially available soap solution made specifically for the detection of leaks to check all connections. A fire or explosion may result causing property damage, personal injury or loss of life.

## **Servicing Hot Surface Igniter**

The igniter does **NOT** require annual inspection. Check igniter resistance before removal, see Fig. 64, Fig. 65 and Fig. 66.

- 1. Turn off gas and electrical supplies to furnace.
- 2. Remove control door.
- 3. Disconnect igniter wire connection.

- Check igniter resistance. Igniter resistance is affected by temperature. Only check resistance when the igniter is at room temperature.
  - a. Using an ohm meter, check resistance across both igniter leads in connector.
  - b. Cold reading should be between 40 ohms and 70 ohms.

    Resistance reading will increase as igniter temperature increases.
- 5. Remove igniter assembly.
  - a. Using a 1/4-in. driver, remove the two screws securing the igniter mounting bracket to the burner assembly See Fig. 64.
  - b. Carefully withdraw the igniter and bracket assembly through the front of the burner assembly without striking the igniter on surrounding parts.
  - c. Inspect igniter for signs of damage or failure.
  - d. If replacement is required, remove the screw that secures the igniter on igniter bracket and remove the igniter.
- To replace igniter and bracket assembly, reverse items 5a through
- 7. Reconnect igniter harness to the igniter, dressing the igniter wires to ensure there is no tension on the igniter itself, see Fig. 64.
- 8. Turn on gas and electrical supplies to furnace.
- Verify igniter operation by initiating control board self-test feature or by cycling thermostat.
- 10. Replace control door.

### Flushing Collector Box and Drainage System

# **WARNING**

## ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Turn off the gas and electrical supplies to the furnace and install lockout tag before performing any maintenance or service. Follow the operating instructions on the label attached to the furnace.

- 1. Turn off gas and electrical supplies to furnace.
- 2. Remove control door.
- 3. Disconnect pressure switch tube from pressure switch port.

**NOTE:** Ensure the pressure switch tube disconnected from the pressure switch is higher than the collector box opening or water will flow out of tube.

- 4. Remove the collector box plug from the top port on the upper corner of the collector box, see Fig. 58.
- 5. Attach a funnel with a flexible tube to port on the collector box.
- 6. Flush inside of collector box with water until discharge water from condensate trap is clean and runs freely.
- Repeat steps 4 thru 6 with middle plug on upper corner of collector box.
- 8. Remove the pressure switch tube from the collector box.

**NOTE:** Do **NOT** blow into tube with tube connected to the pressure switch.

- 9. Clean pressure switch port on collect box with a small wire. Shake any water out of pressure switch tube.
- 10. Reconnect tube to pressure switch and pressure switch port.
- 11. Remove the relief tube from the port on the collector box and the trap.
- 12. Clean the relief port on collect box and the trap with a small wire. Shake any water out of the tube.
- 13. Reconnect relief tube to trap and collector box ports.

### **Cleaning Condensate Drain and Trap**

**NOTE:** If the condensate trap is removed, a new gasket between the trap and collector box is required. Verify a condensate trap gasket is included in the service kit or obtain one from your local distributor.

- 1. Disconnect power at external disconnect, fuse or circuit breaker.
- 2. Turn off gas at external shut-off or gas meter.
- 3. Remove control door and set aside.
- 4. Turn electric switch on gas valve to OFF.
- Disconnect external drain from condensate drain elbow or drain extension pipe inside the furnace and set aside.
- 6. Disconnect the condensate trap relief hose from collector box port and condensate trap.

**NOTE:** If condensate has a heat pad attached to the trap, trace the wires for the pad back to the connection point and disconnect the wires for the heat pad.

- 7. Remove the screw that secures the condensate trap to the collector box, remove the trap and set aside.
- 8. Remove the trap gasket from the collector box if it did not come off when the trap was removed.
- 9. Discard the old trap gasket.
- 10. Rinse condensate trap in warm water until trap is clean.
- 11. Flush condensate drain lines with warm water. Remember to check and clean the relief port on the collector box.
- 12. Shake trap dry.
- 13. Clean port on collector box with a small wire.

### To re-install Condensate Drain and Trap:

- 1. Remove adhesive backing from condensate trap gasket
- 2. Install gasket on collector box
- 3. Align the condensate trap with the drain opening on the collector box and secure the trap with the screw
- 4. Attach the relief hose to the relief port on the condensate trap and collector box.
- 5. Secure tubing to prevent any sags or traps in the tubing.
- Connect condensate drain elbow or drain extension elbow to the condensate trap
- 7. Connect the leads of the condensate heat pad (if used)
- Connect external drain piping to the condensate drain elbow or drain extension pipe.
- Turn gas on at electric switch on gas valve and at external shut-off or meter
- 10. Turn power on at external disconnect, fuse or circuit breaker.
- 11. Run the furnace through two complete heating cycles to check for proper operation
- 12. Install control door when complete.

### **Checking Heat Pad Operation (If Applicable)**

In applications where the ambient temperature around the furnace is 32°F or lower, freeze protection measures are required. If this application is where heat tape has been applied, check to ensure it will operate when low temperatures are present.

**NOTE:** The Heat Pad, when used, should be wrapped around the condensate drain trap. There is no need to use heat tape within the furnace casing. Most heat tapes are temperature activated, and it is not practical to verify the actual heating of the tape. Check the following:

- 1. Check for signs of physical damage to heat tape such as nicks, cuts, abrasions, gnawing by animals, etc.
- Check for discolored heat tape insulation. If any damage or discolored insulation is evident, replace heat tape.
- 3. Check that heat tape power supply circuit is on.

### **Cleaning Heat Exchangers**

The following items must be performed by a qualified service technician.

### **Primary Heat Exchangers**

If the heat exchangers get an accumulation of light dirt or dust on the inside, they may be cleaned by the following procedure:

NOTE: If the heat exchangers get a heavy accumulation of soot and carbon, both the primary and secondary heat exchangers should be replaced rather than trying to clean them thoroughly due to their intricate design. A build-up of soot and carbon indicates that a problem exists which needs to be corrected, such as improper adjustment of manifold pressure, insufficient or poor quality combustion air, improper vent termination, incorrect size or damaged manifold orifice(s), improper gas, or a restricted heat exchanger (primary or secondary). Action must be taken to correct the problem.

# **WARNING**

### ELECTRICAL SHOCK, FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death, or property damage.

Before installing, modifying, or servicing system, main electrical disconnect switch must be in the OFF position and install a lockout tag. There may be more than one disconnect switch. Lock out and tag switch with a suitable warning label. Verify proper operation after servicing. Always reinstall access doors after completing service and maintenance.

# **WARNING**

#### ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND FIRE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Turn off the gas and electrical supplies to the furnace and install lockout tag before performing any maintenance or service. Follow the operating instructions on the label attached to the furnace.

- 1. Turn off gas and electrical supplies to furnace.
- 2. Remove control door.
- Disconnect wires or connectors to flame rollout switch, gas valve, igniter, and flame sensor.
- 4. Using backup wrench, disconnect gas supply pipe from furnace gas control valve.
- 5. Remove two screws attaching top filler plate and rotate upwards to gain access to screws attaching burner assembly to cell panel.
- 6. Remove screws attaching burner assembly to cell panel, see Fig. 64.

**NOTE:** Burner cover, manifold, gas valve, and burner assembly should be removed as one assembly.

7. Clean heat exchanger openings with a vacuum and a soft brush, see Fig. 67.

**NOTE:** After cleaning, inspect the heat exchangers to ensure they are free of all foreign objects that may restrict flow of combustion products.

- 8. Reverse items 6 through 1 for reassembly.
- 9. Refer to furnace wiring diagram and reconnect wires to flame rollout switch, gas valve, igniter, and flame sensor.
- 10. Turn on gas and electrical supplies to furnace.
- 11. Check furnace operation through 2 complete heat operating cycles. Look at burners. Burner flames should be clear blue, almost transparent, see Fig. 62.

- 12. Check for gas leaks.
- 13. Replace main furnace door.

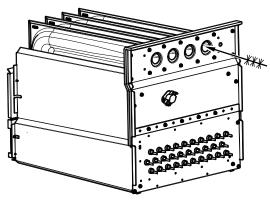


Fig. 67 – Cleaning Heat Exchanger Cell

A11273

### **Secondary Heat Exchangers**

The condensing side (inside) of the secondary heat exchanger CANNOT be serviced or inspected without complete removal of the heat exchanger assembly. Detailed information on heat exchanger removal can be obtained from your Distributor.

### Wiring Diagrams

See Fig. 70 for the Deluxe 4-Way Multipoise Furnace wiring diagrams.

## WARNING

### FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury, death, and/or property damage.

Never purge a gas line into a combustion chamber. Never test for gas leaks with an open flame. Use a commercially available soap solution made specifically for the detection of leaks to check all connections. A fire or explosion may result causing property damage, personal injury or loss of life.

### Winterization

# **A** CAUTION

### UNIT AND PROPERTY DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in unit component or property damage.

If the furnace is installed in an unconditioned space where the ambient temperatures may be  $32^{\circ}$  F (0° C) or lower, freeze protection measures must be taken to prevent property or product damage.

Since the furnace uses a condensing heat exchanger, some water will accumulate in the unit as a result of the heat transfer process. Therefore, once it has been operated, it cannot be turned off and left off for an extended period of time when temperatures will reach 32°F (0°C) or lower unless winterized. Follow these procedures to winterize your furnace:

# **A** CAUTION

### UNIT COMPONENT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in damage to the furnace and other property damage.

Do not use ethylene glycol (automotive antifreeze coolant or equivalent). Failure of plastic components may occur.

- Obtain propylene glycol (RV/swimming pool antifreeze or equivalent).
- 2. Turn off gas and electrical supplies to your furnace.
- 3. Remove furnace control door.
- 4. Remove the top unused rubber plug from the port on the collector box opposite the condensate trap, see Fig. 58.
- 5. Connect a field supplied 3/8-in. (9.5-mm) ID tube to the open port on the collector box
- 6. Insert a field supplied funnel into the tube.
- 7. Pour 1 quart of anti-freeze solution into the funnel/tube. Antifreeze should run through the inducer housing, overfill condensate trap and flow to an open drain.
- 8. Replace the rubber plug in the port on the collector box.
- 9. Remove the middle unused rubber plug from the port on the collector box opposite the condensate trap, see Fig. 58.
- 10. Repeat Steps 5 through 8.
- 11. If a condensate pump is used, check with pump manufacturer to verify pump is safe for use with antifreeze used. Allow pump to start and pump anti-freeze to open drain.
- 12. Replace main door.
- 13. When furnace is re-started, flush condensate pump with clear water to check for proper operation before re-starting furnace.
- 14. Propylene glycol need not be removed before re-starting furnace.
- 15. Component self-test

The furnace features a component test system to help diagnose a system problem in the case of a component failure. To initiate the component test procedure, ensure that there are no thermostat inputs to the control and all time delays have expired. Turn on setup switch SW1-6, see Fig. 57. Refer to page 57 for instructions.

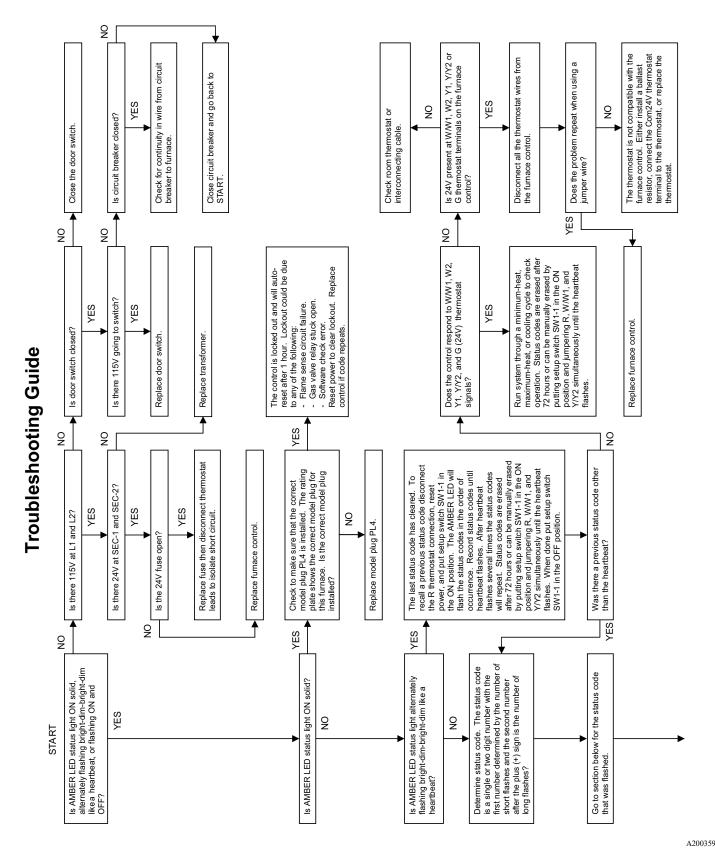
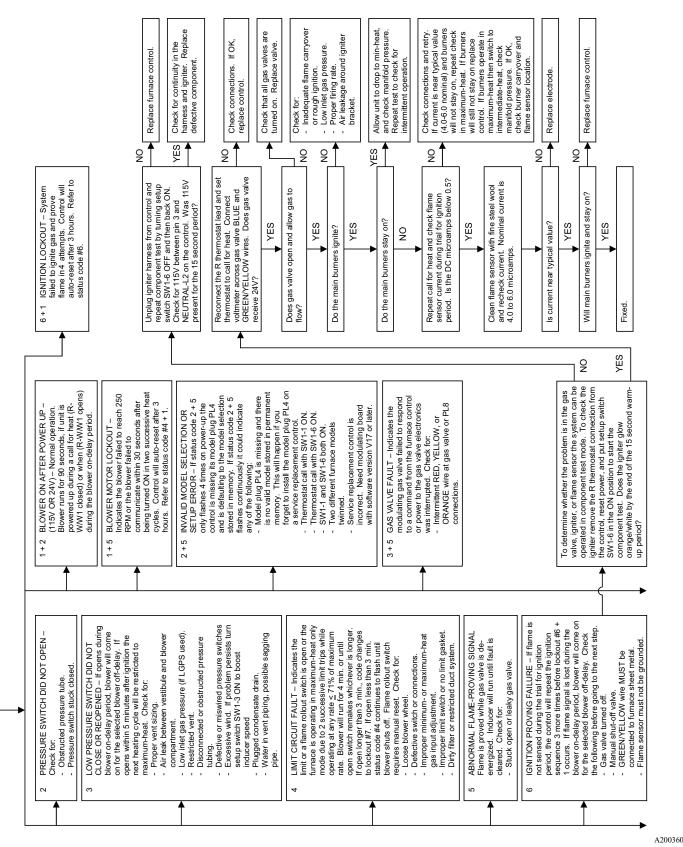
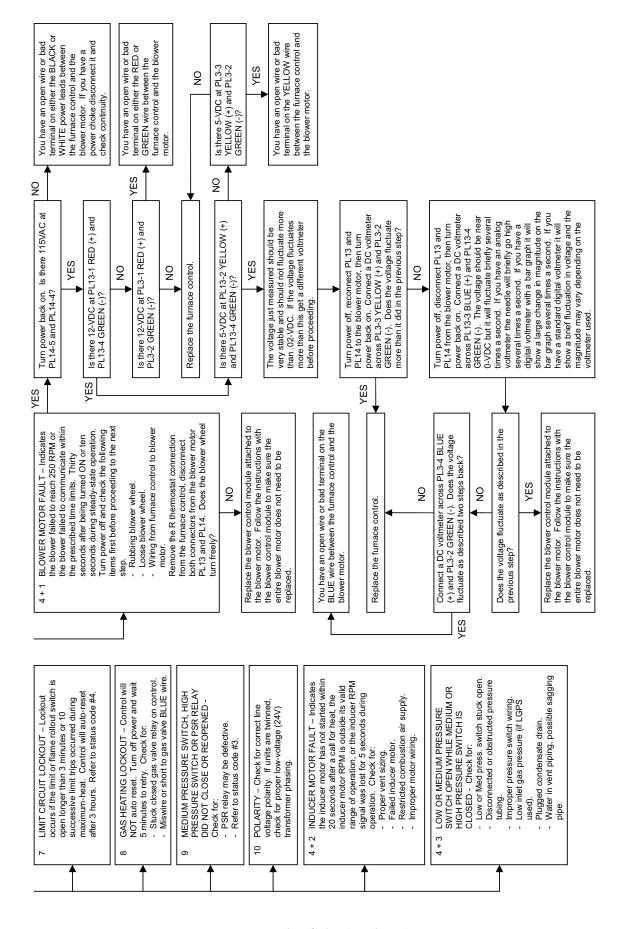


Fig. 68 - Troubleshooting Guide



**Troubleshooting Guide (continued)** 



A200361

### **Troubleshooting Guide (continued)**

### SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

## **A** CAUTION

### UNIT OPERATION HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in intermittent unit operation. Furnace control must be grounded for proper operation or control will lock out. Control is grounded through green/yellow wire routed to gas valve and burner box screw.

Using the schematic diagram, follow the sequence of operation through the different modes, see Fig. 70. Read and follow the wiring diagram very carefully!

**NOTE:** If a power interruption occurs during a call for heat (W/W1 or W/W1-and-W2), the control will start a 90-second blower-only ON period two seconds after power is restored, if the thermostat is still calling for gas heating. The amber LED light will flash code 1+2 during the 90-second period, after which the LED will flash a heartbeat (bright-dim), as long as no faults are detected. After the 90-second period, the furnace will respond to the thermostat normally.

The blower door must be installed for power to be conducted through the blower door interlock switch ILK to the furnace control CPU, transformer TRAN, inducer motor IDM, blower motor BLWM, hot surface igniter HSI, and gas valve GV.

### Communicating Control and Modulating Heating

Best comfort will be attained when a communicating wall control is used with this product. Wiring and set-up instructions are provided with the communicating control. See the furnace data sheet accessory section for help in selecting the appropriate communicating control for this furnace. When a communicating control is used, the furnace will modulate through its full operation range, or can be limited via the minimum and maximum CFM configurations.

Operation of the furnace at the beginning and end of each heating cycle will be the same as detailed below in the Single-Stage Thermostat section EXCEPT that the communicating control will send modulating rate command signals through the communication bus rather than energizing the 24-v thermostat terminals. Note that the R to W/W1 circuit signal will be controlled by the COMMR relay on the furnace control. See the wiring diagram in Fig. 70.

# <u>Single-Stage Thermostat and Modulating Heating</u> (Adaptive Mode)

See Fig. 36 for thermostat connections.

NOTE: Minimum-heat only switch SW1-2 selects the minimum-heat only operation mode when ON. Intermediate-heat only switch SW4-2 selects intermediate-heat only operation mode when ON. If both switches are ON the furnace control will default to intermediate-heat. If either or both switches are ON, the furnace control will operate at two-stages only as referenced in Two Stage Thermostat section below. If both switches are OFF the furnace control will operate in the adaptive heating mode in response to a call for heat, see Fig. 57. When the W2 thermostat terminal is energized it will always cause maximum-heat operation as long as the R to W circuit is closed, regardless of the setting of the minimum-heat or intermediate-heat only switches.

This furnace can operate as a modulating furnace with a single-stage thermostat because the furnace control CPU includes a programmed adaptive sequence of controlled operation, which selects a modulated rate between minimum- and maximum-heat. This selection is based upon the stored history of the length of previous gas-heating periods of the single-stage thermostat.

The furnace will start up in either intermediate-, or maximum-heat. The furnace will transition and operate at minimum-heat or the calculated modulating rate after starting and operating for 45 seconds at

intermediate-heat. The furnace control CPU defaults to minimum-heat on the first thermostat cycle and calculates the modulating rate that the furnace should run at for 19 minutes on subsequent heat cycles.

If the power is interrupted, the stored modulating rate is erased and the furnace control will select intermediate-heat for 45 seconds, minimum-heat for 19 minutes and then switch to maximum-heat, as long as the thermostat continues to call for heat. The furnace control CPU then uses this information to calculate the modulating rate the furnace will operate at on the next heating cycle. If the calculated modulating rate is between 40% - 99% then the furnace control CPU will operate for 45 seconds at intermediate-heat, and then operate at the calculated modulating rate for up to 19 minutes and then switch to maximum-heat as long as the thermostat continues to call for heat. If the calculated modulating rate is 100% then the furnace control will only operate at maximum-heat until the thermostat is satisfied.

The wall thermostat "calls for heat", closing the R to W circuit. The furnace control CPU performs a self-check, verifies the low, medium, and high pressure switch contacts LPS, MPS, and HPS are open, then de-energizes the PSR relay to close the NC contact.

1. Inducer Prepurge Period - The furnace control CPU turns on inducer motor IDM and slowly increases the inducer motor speed. After the low pressure switch LPS closes the furnace control CPU continues to increase the inducer motor speed until the medium pressure switch MPS closes. When the medium pressure switch MPS closes, inducer motor RPM is noted by the furnace control CPU, and a 25-second prepurge period begins. The RPM is used to evaluate vent system resistance. This evaluation is then used to determine the required RPM necessary to operate the inducer motor during pre-purge, the first 45 seconds of intermediate-heat, or any modulating rate that the furnace will transition to after the blower on-delay is completed.

**NOTE:** The heat cycle can start in either intermediate- or maximum-heat. If a maximum-heat cycle is initiated, the furnace control CPU will continue to increase the inducer motor speed after the medium pressure switch MPS closes. When the medium pressure switch closes, inducer motor RPM is noted by the furnace control CPU, and a 25-second prepurge period begins. The RPM is used to evaluate vent system restriction. This evaluation is then used to determine the required RPM necessary to operate the inducer motor in maximum-heat pre-purge, or maximum-heat. The high pressure switch HPS should be closed before ignition but the furnace control ignores this input until after ignition occurs.

- 2. **Igniter Warm-Up** At the end of the prepurge period, the Hot-Surface Igniter HSI is energized for a 17-second igniter warm-up period
- 3. **Trial-For-Ignition Sequence** When the igniter warm-up period is completed the main gas valve relay contact GVR closes to energize the gas valve solenoid GV (pin 5). The gas valve solenoid GV (pin 5) permits gas flow to the burners where it is ignited. Five seconds after the GVR closes, a 2-second Flame-Proving period begins. The HSI igniter will remain energized until flame is sensed or until the 2-second flame proving period begins.
- 4. Flame-Proving When the burner flame is proved at the flame-proving sensor electrode FSE, the furnace control CPU begins the blower-ON delay period and continues to hold the gas valve GV (pin 5) open. If the burner flame is not proved within two seconds, the furnace control CPU will close the gas valve GV (pin 5), and the furnace control CPU will repeat the ignition sequence for up to three more Trials-For-Ignition before going to Ignition-Lockout. Lockout will be reset automatically after three hours, or by momentarily interrupting 115 vac power to the furnace, or by interrupting 24 vac power at SEC1 or SEC2 to the furnace control CPU (not at W/W1, G, R, etc.).

If flame is proved when flame should not be present, the furnace

control CPU will lock out of Gas-Heating mode and operate the inducer motor IDM at full speed until flame is no longer proved.

- Inducer Speed Change If the cycle starts in intermediate-heat, the furnace control CPU reduces the inducer speed slightly after flame sense. If cycle starts in maximum-heat, the furnace control CPU increases the inducer speed after flame sense.
- 6. **Blower-On delay** If the burner flame is proven, the blower-ON delay for intermediate-heat and maximum-heat are as follows:

**Intermediate-heat** - 45 seconds after the gas valve GV (pin 5) is opened the blower motor BLWM is turned ON at the modulating heat airflow.

**Maximum-heat** - 25 seconds after the gas valve GV (pin 5) is opened the BLWM is turned ON at maximum-heat airflow.

Simultaneously, the humidifier terminal HUM and electronic air cleaner terminal EAC-1 are energized and remain energized throughout the heating cycle.

7. Switching from Intermediate-Heat to a Low Range Input - If the furnace control CPU switches from intermediate-heat to a low range input (low range input is an input rate less than or equal to 51% of full rate), the furnace control CPU will turn the blower ON or switch to the modulating heat airflow, energize the PSR relay to open the NC contact, and slowly decrease the inducer motor speed to the desired inducer RPM.

**Switching from a Intermediate-Heat to a Medium Range Input**- If the furnace control CPU switches from intermediate-heat to a

- If the furnace control CPU switches from intermediate-heat to a different medium range input (medium range input is an input rate between 52% and 71% of full rate), the furnace control CPU will turn the blower ON or switch to the modulating heat airflow, and continue to maintain the inducer motor speed or change it further if required.

Switching from a Intermediate-Heat to a High Range Input - If the furnace control CPU switches from intermediate-heat to a high range input (high range input is an input rate greater than or equal to 72% of full rate), the furnace control CPU will turn the blower ON or switch to the modulating heat airflow, and increase the inducer motor speed to the desired inducer motor RPM.

Switching from Low Range Input to Maximum-Heat - If the furnace control CPU switches from a low range input to maximum-heat, the furnace control CPU will de-energize the PSR relay to close the NC contact and slowly increase the inducer motor speed until the medium pressure switch MPS closes. When the medium pressure switch MPS closes the inducer motor RPM is noted by the furnace control CPU. The RPM is used to evaluate vent system resistance. This evaluation is then used to determine the required RPM necessary to operate the inducer motor at maximum-heat. The blower motor BLWM will transition to maximum-heat airflow five seconds after the furnace control CPU switches from a low range input to maximum-heat. As the inducer RPM increases, the high pressure switch HPS should close.

Switching from Medium Range Input to Maximum-Heat - If the furnace control CPU switches from medium range input to maximum-heat, the furnace control CPU will increase the inducer motor speed to the maximum-heat inducer motor RPM. The blower motor BLWM will transition to the maximum-heat airflow five seconds after the furnace control CPU switches from a medium range input to maximum-heat. As the inducer RPM increases, the high pressure switch HPS should close.

8. Blower-Off Delay - When the thermostat is satisfied, the R to W circuit is opened, de-energizing the gas valve GV (pin 5), stopping gas flow to the burners, and humidifier terminal HUM. The inducer motor IDM will remain energized for a 15-second post-purge period. The blower motor BLWM and air cleaner terminal EAC-1 will remain energized at minimum-heat airflow or transition to minimum-heat airflow for 90, 120, 150, or 180 seconds (depending

on selection at blower-OFF delay switches). The furnace control CPU is factory-set for a 120-second blower- OFF delay.

# <u>Two-Stage Thermostat and Modulating Heating</u> (Adaptive Mode)

Operation of Modulating Heating (Adaptive Mode; SW1-2 and SW4-2 are both OFF) with a two-stage thermostat is the same as with a single-stage thermostat, EXCEPT for the following:

If the two-stage thermostat R-W2 circuit closes along with the R to W/W1 circuit, while the furnace is operating at any capacity less than maximum, the furnace will switch to the maximum heating capacity. At this point, the furnace control heating algorithm is overridden and the two-stage thermostat takes control of staging until BOTH R to W/W1 and R to W2 circuits are opened.

The furnace with transition back to the lower heating capacity if the two-stage thermostat opens the R-W2 circuit, but leaves R to W/W1 circuit closed. The furnace control will continue to follow the commands from the two-stage thermostat for W/W1 and W2, until the R to W/W1 circuit is opened.

After the two-stage thermostat opens both the R to W/W1 and R to W2 circuits, the adaptive algorithm will set the beginning capacity of the next heating cycle to the same value as the heating cycle that most recently completed.

# Two-Stage Thermostat and Two-Stage Minimum/Maximum Heating

See Fig. 36 for thermostat connections.

**NOTE:** In this mode, the minimum-heat only switch SW1-2 must be ON to select the minimum-heat only operation mode in response to closing the thermostat R to W1 circuit. Closing the thermostat R to W1-and-W2 circuits always causes maximum-heat operation, regardless of the setting of the minimum-heat only switch.

The furnace will start up in either intermediate-, or maximum-heat. The furnace will operate in minimum-heat after starting and operating for 1 minute at intermediate-heat before transitioning to minimum-heat.

The wall thermostat "calls for heat", closing the R to W1 circuit for minimum-heat or closing the R to W1-and-W2 circuits for maximum-heat. The furnace control performs a self-check, and verifies the low, medium and high pressure switch contacts LPS, MPS and HPS are open, then de-energizes the PSR relay to close the NC contact.

The start up and shut down functions and delays described above apply to the 2-stage minimum/maximum heating mode as well, except for switching from maximum- to minimum-heat.

9. Switching from Maximum- to Minimum-Heat - If the thermostat R to W2 circuit opens, and the R to W1 circuit remains closed, the furnace control CPU will gradually decrease the inducer motor speed to the required intermediate-heat RPM. When the inducer motor IDM reduces pressure sufficiently, the high pressure switch HPS will open and the gas rate will be changed to intermediate-heat. The gas valve solenoid GV (pin 5) will remain energized as long as the low pressure switch LPS remains closed. When the inducer motor speed gets within 15% of the required intermediate-heat RPM the furnace control CPU will start a 5 second blower airflow change delay. After the 5 second blower airflow change delay is completed the blower airflow will transition to minimum-heat airflow. At this point the furnace control CPU will energize the PSR relay to open the NC contact and slowly decrease the inducer motor speed to the required minimum-heat RPM. When the PSR relay is energized and the NC contact opens the furnace control CPU will reduce the gas rate to minimum-heat RPM.

## Two-Stage Thermostat and Two-Stage Intermediate/ Maximum Heating

See Fig. 36 for thermostat connections

**NOTE:** In this mode the intermediate-heat only switch SW4-2 must be ON to select the intermediate-heat only operation mode in response to closing the thermostat R to W1 circuit. Closing the thermostat R to W1-and-W2 circuits always causes maximum-heat operation, regardless of the setting of the intermediate-heat only switch.

The wall thermostat "calls for heat", closing the R to W1 circuit for intermediate-heat or closing the R to W1-and-W2 circuits for maximum-heat. The furnace control performs a self-check, and verifies the low, medium and high pressure switch contacts LPS, MPS and HPS are open, then de-energizes the PSR relay to close the NC contact.

The start up and shut down functions and delays described above apply to the two-stage intermediate/maximum heating mode as well, except for switching from maximum- to intermediate-heat.

1. Switching from Maximum- to Intermediate-Heat — If the thermostat R to W2 circuit opens, and the R to W1 circuit remains closed, the furnace control CPU will gradually decrease the inducer motor speed to the required intermediate-heat RPM. When the inducer motor IDM reduces pressure sufficiently, the high pressure switch HPS will open and the gas rate will be changed to intermediate-heat. When the inducer motor speed gets within 15% of the required intermediate-heat RPM the furnace control CPU will start a 5 second blower airflow change delay. After the 5 second blower airflow change delay is completed the blower airflow will transition to intermediate-heat airflow.

### Cooling Mode

The thermostat "calls for cooling."\_

#### 1. Single-Speed Cooling

See Fig. 36 for thermostat connections.

The thermostat closes the R to G-and-Y circuits. The R to Y circuit starts the outdoor unit, and the R to G-and-Y/Y2 circuits start the furnace blower motor BLWM on cooling airflow. Cooling airflow is based on the A/C selection shown in Fig. 57.

The electronic air cleaner terminal EAC-1 is energized with 115 vac when the blower motor BLWM is operating. When the thermostat is satisfied, the R to G-and-Y circuits are opened. The outdoor unit will stop, and the furnace blower motor BLWM will continue operating at cooling airflow for an additional 90 seconds. Jumper Y/Y2 to DHUM to reduce the cooling off-delay to 5 seconds, see Fig. 36.

#### 2. Two Stage Thermostat and Two-Speed Cooling

See Fig. 36 for thermostat connections.

The thermostat closes the R to G-and-Y1 circuits for low cooling or closes the R to G-and-Y1-and-Y2 circuits for high cooling. The R to Y1 circuit starts the outdoor unit on low cooling speed, and the R to G-and-Y1 circuit starts the furnace blower motor BLWM at low-cooling airflow which is the SW3 selection as shown in Fig. 57. The R to Y1-and-Y2 circuits start the outdoor unit on high-cooling speed, and the R to G-and-Y/Y2 circuits start the furnace blower motor BLWM at high-cooling airflow. High-cooling airflow is based on the A/C selection shown in Fig. 57.

The electronic air cleaner terminal EAC-1 is energized with 115 vac whenever the blower motor BLWM is operating.

When the thermostat is satisfied, the R to G-and-Y1 or R to G-and-Y1-and-Y2 circuits are opened. The outdoor unit stops, and the furnace blower BLWM and electronic air cleaner terminal EAC-1 will remain energized for an additional 90 seconds. Jumper Y1 to DHUM to reduce the cooling off-delay to 5 seconds, see Fig. 57.

#### 3. Dehumidification Mode

See Fig. 36 for thermostat connections.

The dehumidification output, D or DHUM on the Thermostat should be connected to the furnace control thermostat terminal DHUM. When there is a dehumidify demand, the DHUM input is activated, which means 24 vac signal is removed from the DHUM input terminal. In other words, the DHUM input logic is reversed. The DHUM input is turned ON when no dehumidify demand exists. Once 24 vac is detected by the furnace control, dehumidification capability is activated. If the DHUM input is removed for more than 48 hours, the furnace control reverts back to non-dehumidification mode.

The cooling operation described above in the Cooling Mode section also applies to Dehumidification mode. The exceptions are listed below:

- a. Low cooling When the R to G-and-Y1 circuit is closed and there is a demand for dehumidification, the furnace blower motor BLWM will drop the blower airflow to 86% of low cooling airflow which is the SW3 selection as shown in Fig. 57.
- a. High cooling When the R to G-and Y/Y2 circuit is closed and there is a demand for dehumidification, the furnace blower motor BLWM will drop the blower airflow to 86% of high-cooling airflow. High-cooling airflow is based on the A/C selection shown in Fig. 57.
- b. Cooling off-delay When the "call for cooling" is satisfied and there is a demand for dehumidification, the cooling blower-off delay is decreased from 90 seconds to 5 seconds.

## **Continuous Blower Mode**

When the R to G circuit is closed by the thermostat, the blower motor BLWM will operate at continuous blower airflow. Continuous blower airflow selection is initially based on the SW3 selection shown in Table 5. Factory default is shown in Table 5. Terminal EAC-1 is energized as long as the blower motor BLWM is energized.

During a call for heat, the furnace control CPU will transition the blower motor BLWM to continuous blower airflow, minimum-heat airflow, or the mid-range airflow, whichever is lowest. The blower motor BLWM will remain ON until the main burners ignite then shut OFF and remain OFF for the blower-ON delay (45 seconds in intermediate heat, and 25 seconds in maximum-heat), allowing the furnace heat exchangers to heat up more quickly, then restarts at the end of the blower-ON delay period at modulating or maximum-heat airflow respectively.

The blower motor BLWM will revert to continuous-blower airflow after the heating cycle is completed. When the thermostat satisfies, the furnace control CPU will drop the blower motor BLWM to minimum-heat airflow during the selected blower-OFF delay period before transitioning to continuous-blower airflow.

When the thermostat "calls for low-cooling", the blower motor BLWM will operate at low-cooling airflow. When the thermostat is satisfied, the blower motor BLWM will operate an additional 90 seconds at low-cooling airflow before transitioning back to continuous-blower airflow.

When the thermostat "calls for high-cooling", the blower motor BLWM will operate at high cooling airflow. When the thermostat is satisfied, the blower motor BLWM will operate an additional 90 seconds at high-cooling airflow before transitioning back to continuous-blower airflow

When the R to G circuit is opened, the blower motor BLWM will continue operating for an additional 5 seconds, if no other function requires blower motor BLWM operation.

### **Heat Pump**

See Fig. 36 for thermostat connections. When installed with a heat pump, the furnace control automatically changes the timing sequence to avoid long blower off times during demand defrost cycles. Whenever W/W1 is energized along with Y1 or Y/Y2, the furnace control CPU will transition to or bring on the blower motor BLWM at cooling airflow, minimum-heat airflow, or the mid-range airflow, whichever is lowest.

The blower motor BLWM will remain on until the main burners ignite then shut OFF and remain OFF for 25 seconds before coming back on at modulating heat airflow. When the W/W1 input signal disappears, the furnace control begins a normal inducer post-purge period while changing the blower airflow. If Y/Y2 input is still energized the furnace control CPU will transition the blower motor BLWM airflow to cooling airflow. If Y/Y2 input signal disappears and the Y1 input is still energized the furnace control CPU will transition the blower motor BLWM to low-cooling airflow. If both the Y1 and Y/Y2 signals

disappear at the same time, the blower motor BLWM will remain on at minimum-heat airflow for the selected blower-OFF delay period. At the end of the blower-OFF delay, the blower motor BLWM will shut OFF unless G is still energized, in which case the blower motor BLWM will operate at continuous blower airflow.

### **Component Self Test**

Refer to page 54 for instructions.

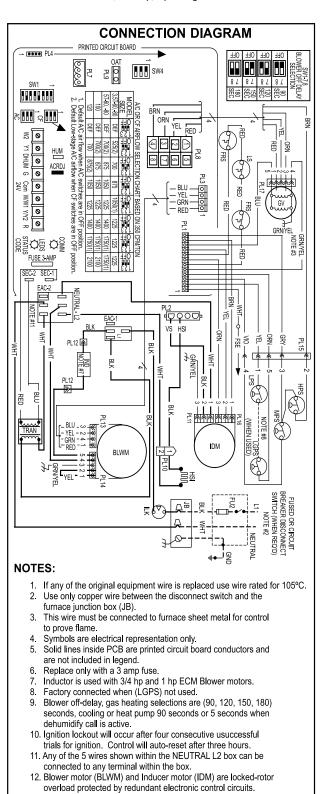
### SERVICE If status code recall is needed, disconnect the "R" thermostat lead, reset power, and put setup switch "SW1-1" in the ON position. To clear the status code history put setup switch "SW1-1" in the ON position and jumper thermostat terminals "R", "WW1" and "V"/2" simultaneously until heartbeat is flashed. Stored status codes are erased automatically after 72 hours or as specified. LED CODE STATUS CONTINUOUS OFF - Check for 115 VAC at Neutral and 24VAC at SEC-1 and SEC-2, and 24VAC fuse. HEARTBEAT - (BRIGHT-DIM) Control has 24VAC power. ON SOLID - Auto-reset after 1 hour lockout due to; - Gas valve relay stuck - Flame sense circuit failure - Software check error Reset power to clear lockout. Replace control if status code repeats. - Gas valve relay stuck open EACH OF THE FOLLOWING STATUS CODES IS A SINGLE OR TWO DIGIT NUMBER WITH THE FIRST NUMBER DETERMINED BY THE NUMBER OF SHORT FLASHES AND THE SECOND NUMBER AFTER THE PLUS (+) SIGN IS THE NUMBER OF LONG FLASHES. OFF SECONDARY VOLTAGE FUSE IS OPEN - Check for: - Short circuit in secondary voltage (24VAC) wiring. 2 PRESSURE SWITCH DID NOT OPEN - Check for: - Obstructed pressure tubing - Pressure switch Pressure switch stuck closed LOW PRESSURE SWITCH DID NOT CLOSE OR REOPENED - Indicates the low pressure switch input failed to close on a call for heat, or opened during minimum heat. If opens during 5 minutes after ignition the next heating ocle will be restricted to maximum heat. Check for: Proper vent sizing - Plugged condensate drain - Excessive wind - Restricted vent - Low inlet gas pressure (if LGPS used) - Improper pressure switch wiring - Water in vent piping, possible sagging pipe - Disconnected or obstructed pressure tubing - Failed or "Out-of-Calibration" pressure switches 4 LIMIT CIRCUIT FAULT - Indicates a limit or itame rollout, is open or the furnace is operating at maximum heat due to 2 successive low or medium range limit trips. Blower will run for 4 minutes or until open switch remakes whichever is longer If open longer than 3 minutes, code changes to lockout #7. If open less than 3 minutes status code #4 continues to flash until blower shuts off. Flame rollout switch requires manual reset. Check for: Improper limit switch or no limit gasket - Defective switch or connections - Improper gas input adjustment - Loose blower wheel - Stuck hich-fleat solenoid in gas valve ABNORMAL FLAME-PROVING SIGNAL - Flame is proved while gas valve is de-energized. Inducer will run until fault is deared. Check for: Leaky gas valve - Stuck-open gas valve IGNITION PROVING FAULT - Control will try three more times before lockout #6 + 1 occurs. If flame signal lost during blower on delay period, blower will come on for the selected blower off-delay. Check for: - Gas valve defective turned "OFF" Oxide buildup on flame sensor (clean with fine steel wool) - Flame sensor must not be grounded - Proper flame sense microamps (.5 microamps D.C. min., 4.0 - 6.0 nominal) Green/yellow wire MUST be connected to furnace sheet metal ough ignition - Defective Hot Surface Ignitor Manual valve shut-off Control ground continuity - Low inlet gas pressure - Inadequate flame carryover or rough lightion - Defective Hot Surface Ignitor - Defective Hot Ignitor - Defe trips occurred during maximum heat. - Control will auto reset after 3 hours. - Refer to #4 GAS HEATING LOCKOUT - Control will NOT auto reset. Check for: - Mis-wired gas valve - Defective control (valve relay) MEDIUM PRESSURE SWITCH, HIGH PRESSURE SWITCH, OR PSR RELAY DID NOT CLOSE OR REOPENED - Indicates the medium or high pressure switch failed to dose on a call for intermediate or maximum heat, or opened during a heat cycle. PSR relay may be defective. Refer to status code #3. POLARITY - Check for correct line voltage polarity. If units are twinned, check for proper low-voltage (24V) transformer phasing 1+2 BLOWER ON AFTER POWER UP (115VAC or 24VAC) - Blower runs for 90 seconds, if unit is powered up during a call for heat (R-WWM) closed) or (R-WWM1) opens during blower on Jelay period. 1+5 BLOWER MOTOR LOCKOUT - Indicates the blower failed to reach 250 RPM or the blower failed to communicate within 30 seconds after being turned ON in two successive heating cycles. Control will auto reset after 3 hours. Refer to status code #4 + 1. 2 + 5 MODEL SELECTION OR SETUP ERROR - Either indicates the model plug (PL4) is missing or incorrect or setup switch "SW1-1" or "SW1-6" is positioned improperly. If code flashes only 4 times on power-up control is defaulting to model selection stored in memory. Check the following: - Thermostat call with "SW1-1" ON - Thermostat call with "SW1-6" ON - "SW1-1" and "SW1-6" both ON together - Two different furnace models twinned See Rating Plate for model plug number and resistance values if code flashes continuously 3+5 GAS VALVE FAULT - Indicates the modulating gas valve failed to communicate. Check connection to furnace control and gas valve. 4+1 BLOWER MOTOR FAULT - Indicates the blower failed to reach 250 RPM or the blower failed to communicate within the prescribed time limits. Thirty seconds after being turned ON or ten seconds during steady-state operation. 4+2 INDUCER MOTOR FAULT - Indicates the inducer has not started within 20 seconds after a call for heat, the inducer motor RPM is outside its valid range of operation, or the inducer RPM signal was lost for 5 seconds during operation. Check for -Proper vent sizing -Restricted combustion air supply -Failed inducer motor -Improper motor wiring 4+3 LOW OR MEDIUM PRESSURE SWITCH OPEN WHILE MEDIUM OR HIGH PRESSURE SWITCH IS CLOSED - Check for: Plugged condensate drain - low inlet gas pressure (if LGPS used) - Improper pressure switch wiring Water in vent piping, possibly sagging pipe - Stuck open low or medium pressure switch Disconnected or obstructed pressure tubing HPS closes before LPS - HPS closes before MPS - MPS closes before LPS 6+1 IGNITION LOCKOUT - Control will auto-reset after 3 hours. Refer to #6. **COMPONENT TEST** To initiate the component test sequence shut OFF the room thermostat or disconnect the "R" thermostat lead. Reset power and then put setup switch "SW1-6" in the ON position to start the component test sequence. Once initiated the furnace control will turn the inducer ON. The inducer motor will run for the entire test. The hot surface igniter and blower motor will be turned ON for 15 seconds each. When the blower is turned OFF the inducer will be turned OFF. When the component test is completed one or more of the following codes will flash. CODE DESCRIPTION

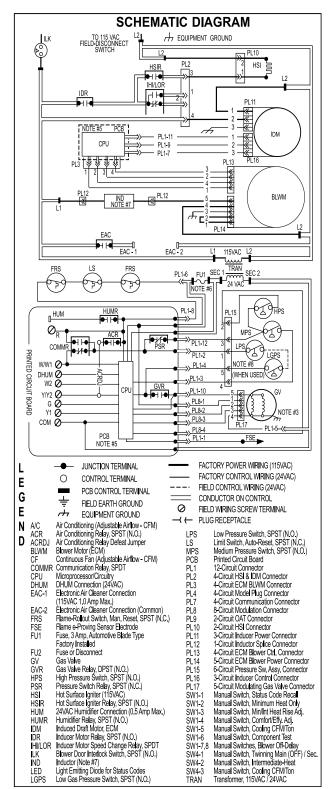
HEARTBEAT - Indicates the inducer and blower motor tested OK. Visual check of hot surface igniter required.

2+5 SETUP ERROR - Same as code 2+5 above.
3+5 GAS VALVE FAULT - same as code 3+5 above.
4+1 BLOWER MOTOR FAULT - Indicates blower motor failed test. Check blower, wiring, and furnace control. 4 + 2 INDUCER MOTOR FAULT - Indicates inducer motor failed test. Check inducer, wiring and furnace control. To repeat component test turn setup switch "SW1-6" OFF and then back ON. After component test is completed put setup switch "SW1-6" in the OFF position and reconnect the "R" thermostat lead.

Fig. 69 - Service Label Information

A200363





338307-201 Rev.N A200364

Fig. 70 – Wiring Diagram

### PARTS REPLACEMENT INFORMATION GUIDE

Casing Group Gas Control Group

Blower door Burner
Bottom plate Flame sensor
Control door Gas valve

Door knob assembly Hot surface igniter

Top filler plate Manifold

Electrical Group

3-Amp fuse

Orifice

Heat Exchanger Group

Circuit board Containment plate
Control box Coupling Box

Door switchHeat exchanger assemblyJunction boxPrimary HX cell panelLimit switch(es)Secondary HX assemblyTransformerTubing gaskets

Blower Group Inducer Group

Blower housing Collector box
Blower motor Condensate trap
Blower wheel Condensate trap elbow

Cut-off plate Gaskets
Power choke (where used) Inducer

Filter Group Inducer assembly

Filter(s)

Inducer motor capacitor (when used)

Media Cabinet (when used)

Inducer motor module (when used)

Pressure switch(es)

TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ON PARTS: Consult your installing dealer or a licensed Heating and Air Conditioning company of your choice:

### INTERNATIONAL COMFORT PRODUCTS

a division of Carrier Corporation LEWISBURG, TN 37091 U.S.A.

Have available the model number, series number, and serial number located on the unit rating plate to ensure correct replacement part.

### MODEL NOMENCLATURE

MODEL	HEATING SIZE	WIDTH	COOLING AIRFLOW (CFM)	MINOR SERIES
(F/G)97CMN	060	17	14	

## **WARNING**

### FIRE, EXPLOSION, ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in dangerous operation, personal injury, death or property damage.

Improper installation, adjustment, alteration, service, or maintenance can cause personal injury, property damage, or death. Consult a qualified installer, service agency, or your local gas supplier for information or assistance. The qualified installer or service agency must use only factory-authorized replacement parts, kits, or accessories when modifying this product.

© 2023 Carrier. All rights reserved.

A Carrier Company

Edition Date: 02/23



97CMN and G97CMN: Installation,	Start-up, Operating and Service	and Maintenance Instruction	s	